VALENTINE (2)
AND
ORSON,
The Two SONS of
THE
Emperour of Greece.

Newly Corrected and Amended, with new Pictures, Lively Expressing the
HISTORY.

London, Printed by *J. R.* for *T. Passinger*, at the Sign of the three Bibles, on *London-Bridge*, MDCLXXXV.

THE PRINTER TO THE READER.

AMongst many Hiſtories, as well *Ancient* as *Modern*, which have in Former times borrowed our *Engliſh Phraſe* to ſpeak withal, this (gentle Reader) here of *Valentine* and *Orſon*, Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*, now once again Newly Imprinted, craves a free paſſage of thy Acceptance; and puts it ſelf to the cenſure of thoſe Hiſtoriographers, which makes *Invention* the Eldeſt *Daughter* of the *Seven Sciences*. Therefore conſidering with my ſelf the worthineſs of the Story, with the Variety thereof; being many years ago firſt written in *French*, and ſince Tranſlated into *Engliſh*: where it hath found a favourable welcome, as well of Superiours as Inferiours: I have now again to my Coſt and Charge, Publiſhed it to the Eye and Ear of ſuch, (to be ſeen or heard) as take plea-

ſure in theſe kind of Writings. It is furniſhed with much ſtate of matter, Elegancy and Invention, and Decked forth with many fair *Models*, and Lively *Pictures*, all pertinent and agreeable to the Subject of the Hiſtory, which I have cauſed to be newly Cut: not only to make it carry the more grace in Reading, but a more Luſtre to *Heroick Atchievements* of *Knightly Adventures*: For here may the *Princely Mind* ſee his *Own Model*: the *Knightly Tilter* his *Martial Atchievements*: and the *Amorous Lady* her *Dulcet Paſſages of Love*: Here are *Countries*, with the *Courts of Kings deciphered*: the *Magnitude of Honours laid open*; and the *True Form of Turnaments deſcribed*: and between *Knight* and *Knight* are here *moſt lively Combats Portrayed*; to the great Content of the Reader. Let no Man therefore think his *Time ill Spent*, or his *Labour loſt*, where the Matter affords ſuch *Copiouſneſs of Pleaſure*. The *Hiſtory* for the *Strangeneſs*, may well bear the *Title* of Courtly *Contents*, for indeed it is a *Garden* of Courtly *delights*, wherein *Grows Flowers* of an *Extraordinary Savour*, that gives a *Scent* in the boſoms of *Nobility*, *Ladies*, *Knights*, and *Gentlewomen*. It gives alſo a *Working* to the *Minds* of the *Dul-Country-Swains*: and (as it were) leads them to ſearch out for *Martial Atchievements*, befitting many *Paſtimes*. Herein is alſo

ſo Contained the True *difference* betwixt *Art* and *Nature*; for in *VALENTINE* is *Comprehended* the *Education of Art*; and in *ORSON* the *true working of Nature*; for being *both one Emperours Sons*, the *One* of them *brought up* in a *Princes* Palace, the *Other* among *Savage Beaſts*; Now makes the *Current* Paſs with more *Admiration* to the *Reader*: *Mark* but the *Carriage* of Wild *Orſon*, and you ſhall find *that Nature hath a being above Art*, but yet *nature bettered by Art, hath a more noble Working*. This *Hiſtory* here *Written* was *Tranſlated* out of *French* into *Engliſh*, above *a Hundred Years ago*, by one *Henry Watſon*, and ſince that time, it hath been by *him Corrected*, and put into a more *Plyant Stile*, and ſo *followed on to the Preſs*, till this *preſent Edition*, which *I have* (*as you ſee*) here *Publiſhed* for thy Benefit: Therefore (*Gentle Reader*) accept of this my *coſt and pains*, who had rather prove a *loſer*, then ſo *worthy* a *ſtory* as this is, ſhould lie in *Obſcurity*: for there are few *ſubjects* of *humane carriage*, but are herein handled, therefore the more fitting to be ſeen into. If you deſire to ſee the *cares* and *troubles* of *Kings*, here they are: If you deſire to know the *battels* of *Martial* Champions, here they are: If of *courtly Turnaments* and Combats of *Princes*, here they are: If of the *Travels* of *Knightly adventures*, here they are: If of the

Sorrows

Sorrows of *Distressed* Ladies, here they are; If of strange *Births*, and savage *Educations*, here they are: If of *Friends long lost*, and of their *Joyful Meeting again*, here they are: If of *Charms* and *Enchantments* here they are: If of the *Reward* of *Traytors* and *Treasons*, here they are: If of *long Captivities* and *Imprisonments*, here they are: Yea, here are all the *Varieties* and *Passages* that may furnish forth a History fit for a Readers pleasure, for no unseemly words or speeches are herein contained, but such as are modestly carried.

Considering all which, I am now encouraged to put this Old Story into a New Livery, and not to suffer that to lie Buried, that a little Cost may keep alive.

And so (Gentle Reader) craving thy kind Acceptance, I wish thee as much willingness to the Reading, as I have been forward in the Printing: and so I End.

FAREWEL.

The

THE HISTORY OF Valentine and Orson.

CHAP. I.

How King *Pepin* baniſhed his Queen *Bertha*; and how he gave his Siſter *Belliſant* in Marriage to *Alexander*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*.

WE find it credibly ſet down in Antient Chronicles, that the thrice Noble and Valiant Pepin, ſome time a King of France, took to Wife one Bertha, who was deſcended of no leſs then Royal Race: This Lady was exceeding fair and wiſe, but wonderfully cumbred with many adverſities and troubles, enviouſly beſet on every ſide: which with great Patience ſhe alwayes ſuffered.

The chief Inſtrumant of all this Treacherous miſchief towards this good Queen, was Plotted and Effected by a Falſe and Curſed Old Woman, who firſt of all brought her in Diſgrace with the King her Husband, and after to be quite Baniſhed his Bed, while ſhe in a Cunning manner brought in a Daughter of her own in the good Queen Bertha's ſtead. This Old Woman having thus brought her Treachery to Effect (for her Daughter ſomewhat reſembled Bertha) it ſo came to paſs, that King Pepin had Two Sons by this Maiden, to wit, Hanfroy & Henry,

both which Sons ſo grieved the King, and ſo waſted the Country of France by their Outrages and Fury, that in the end they cauſed the Queen Bertha to be utterly baniſhed, where ſhe paſſed a great part of her days in doleful lamentation, & abundance of ſorrow. She long endured thoſe miſerable days of ſorrow, at the laſt began to receive comfort again: For it ſo chanced after, at the earneſt ſuit & requeſt of divers great Peers and Lords of France, this good Queen began to find favour again with K. Pepin her Husband (who when he knew the Treachery that the wicked Old Woman had plotted againſt her) much bewailed the miſeries ſhe had endured, and with great Honour and Triumph received her again moſt kindly. The Queen being thus reſtored to her former bed, in ſhort time conceived and bare unto the King a goodly Son, called Charlemain the puiſſant: But the King himſelf was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforeſaid Haufrey and Henry, & at the laſt compelled by them to forſake his Realm, as hereafter followeth more at large in the enſuing Hiſtory.

My purpoſe now at this preſent is, to ſet down unto the Reader, the whole matter contained in this Book: and eſpecially, the Gallant Acts and Deeds of Valentine and his Brother Orſon.

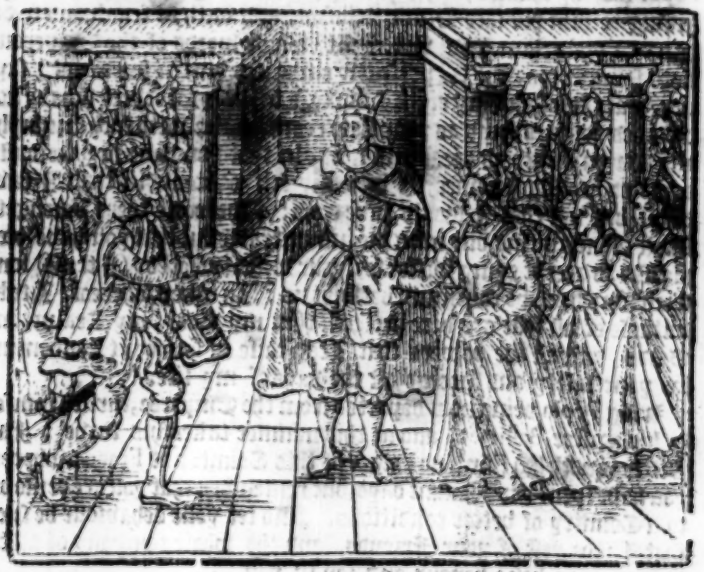
This K. Pepin had a Siſter named Belliſant, a Woman of great wit, beauty, & all the endowments that Nature might afford, which cauſed her brother Pepins love mightily to appear to all the world in the ardent love and affection that he bare towards her. It chanced, that the fame of this lovely perſonage ſpread it ſelf ſo abroad in ſundry Regions, that at laſt K. Alexander, Emperor of Conſtantinople, who was much enflamed with her beauty, came into France, accompanied with a gallant troop of his nobility, all richly ſet out with all manner of Pomp belonging to ſo great a Perſonage.

This Emperor, ſhortly after his arrival, ſuddenly aſſembled all his Lords in their rich Habiliments, appointing them to take their way towards King Pepins Court, to declare unto him the cauſe of his coming, which was to enjoy his fair Siſter Belliſant in Marriage. The Nobles, according to his command, came unto K. Pepin, declaring unto him the cauſe of their Emperors coming into his Country: which when K. Pepin underſtood, he joyfully entertained them, and quickly granted the Emperors requeſt.

King

King Pepin underſtanding this ſudden (but joyful) News, made great preparations in his Court, for the entertaining of this Noble Emperor: All things being in readineſs, K. Pepin with all his noble train, went to meet *Alexander* Emperor of Conſtantinople: whom when they met, they entertained with great joy, & conducted him to the Court of France, where fair Belliſant was, and ſhe entertained him with no leſs joy, then her Brother K. Pepin had done before: and there they ſpent their time in great joy and triumphing.

This Marriage being once publiquely known among all the Inhabitants, joy began to ſhew forth it ſelf on every ſide, for ſuch a happy Day, wherein ſuch good Alliance was knit between the Emperor *Alexander*, and Pepin King of France: that triumphs began in every place, againſt the Nuptial Days appearance: When the time appointed came: theſe two were Eſpouſed in all Honour fitting for their Eſtates, and largeneſs ſhewed it ſelf on



every side. This marriage scarce endured long, but at last being ended, the Emperor (assisted with all his Worthy Train) made preparation to take their leave of King Pepin his brother in Law, & take their way towards Constantinople, with his fair Empress Bellisant. Being thus all mounted on Horse-back, King Pepin also set forward with his Brother Emperor, to bring him on his way, Royally attended on every side, with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court: And they that could not find Legs to go, found eyes to weep for the departure of their fair Lady and Mistris, the new Empress of Constantinople.

At last, both these Mighty Princes came nèer unto a Port of the Sea, whereat they must nèds part; there taking leave of each other, they were forced to render more thanks in tears then words, the which I am not able to express: But above all, the Emperor yielded K. Pepin worthy thanks for his quick, sudden and generous consent, in giving to him his fair Sister Bellisant, and with so frank and frèe a heart to yield him good will. At which words of the Emperour unto King Pepin, the K. presently embraced him in his arms: saying, 'Fair Sir, and my right Loving Lord and Brother, I have not received you according as your state required, nor with such triumphs and Magnificence as became me, but in that you have so graciously accepted my small power, I hold my self content in that I have done, but not that I should have done: & therefore there belongeth small thanks to me, but from me innumerable, in that you have bèen pleased to accept of my Sister for your wife: whereby (I trust) long friendship shall be continued betwixt us: In token whereof, I take witness of all that are here present, that my Body, my Realm, my Goods, and all the powers that I can raise in France, to adventure for your safety and succour all the days of my life.

King Pepin being now departed from the Emperor, turned himself to his Sister Bellisant, and in this manner takes his leave: Fair Sister (quoth he) think no longer of this Country of France, wherein you have spent your Infant days, but remember that you are removed to a Country of better conditions. Also let your behaviour be such, that I, the rest of your Friends, and the whole company of all the Peers, may have honour and joy in you.

Again, as the Country where you now do go is strange unto you,

so

ſo be you governed by the modeſt Ladies of the Land, & give no ear to wicked counſel, or to ſuch as would move you to diſloyalty; For you are the creature that I have alwayes dearelt loved in all the world; wherefore, if I ſhould hear tydings other then good from you, or of you, it would be the only cauſe to take away my life. After this he gave unto his Siſter many worthy gifts, and ſo embracing and kiſſing her, with weeping eyes, he left her to the mercy of the Waves: The young Lady, whoſe heart being overcharged betwixt joy & fear, was not able to anſwer a word, and what with tears and ſighs, the paſſage of her tongue was utterly ſtopt. Then all the Lords & Ladies took their leave each of other, at which was let fall many a brinish tear, as well on their parts of France, as they alſo that were to go for Conſtantinople, but eſpecially for the departure of the Fair Lady Belliſant.

All Duties of love being ended, K. Pepin returned into France, and the Emperor by this time mounted upon the Seas, had wind and water at ſuch will & pleaſure, that within ſhort ſpace, he with all his Train arrived with ſafety at Conſtantinople: where at their landing they were all received with great Joy, Honor and Triumph, all which, here were needleſs to recount. But mark what hapned not long after theſe joys & triumphs were clean extinguiſhed, that were made for the Lady Belliſant, in place thereof, nothing but mournings, lamentations and tears were placed, and all for the ſaid poor Lady, which by treaſon and falſe accuſations, was caſt out and baniſhed, as hereafter more at large you ſhall perceive.

CHAP. II.

How the Arch-prieſt of *Conſtantinople* betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Maſter in making love to fair *Belliſant* the Empreſs, and what evil followed thereupon.

IN Conſtantinople Lived an Arch-prieſt, in whom the Emperor put ſuch Truſt, and loved ſo fervently, that he beſtowed upon him great Riches and Poſſeſſions, and committed all his Weſome thoughts unto his Secrecy: And in the end made him ſole Governour and Commander over all his Houſe; as alſo, he was the

Emperors

Emperors Principal Confessor, & one of his greatest Favourites, for the which, he afterwards had many a sorrowful heart.

This Bishop forgetting all the Emperors favours, and great honors done unto him, being intangled and overcome with the beauty of the new Empress, which excelled all mortal Creatures, inordinate lust prevailed with him so far, that there was nothing stood in his way, save only fit time & opportunity to settle this his determination. At last it chanced on a day, that he espyed her all alone, sitting solitarily in her Chamber, which this Arch-priest well observing, he came into the chamber likewise, and sat down by her: At last he began to behold her with a smiling and jesting countenance, of all which (the Lady mistrusted nothing) for that she very well remembred his greatness with the Emperor, and his familiarity in the House, and she never so much as once Dreaming or thinking such an evil thought, as that he thereby would colour so filthy an act, as to motion her to dishonour, especially towards the Emperor his worthy Lord and Master, who so dearly esteemed of him, & so much affected him: But there is never more danger like to ensue, then when one of the same house intendeth Treason. But at the last, after many gestures of impurity, and sitting still by this worthy and vertuous Lady, he began to utter his lascivious thoughts on this manner.

Right dear and Soveraign Lady (qd. he) I am your Servant and Chaplain, therefore I beseech you not to stop your ears, but rather set them wide open to hear my rude words, especially, for that I am burnt up in affection towards your fair Person, and for whose love I have suffered intollerable torments in my fiery bosome. Know therefore (my redoubted Lady) that the beauty of your admirable person, and the supernal form wherein you are framed and composed, hath even ravished my spirits, broken my heart, split my whole sences in sunder, and quite berest me of all rest, both by night and day, and only with doting upon your peerless Beauty. Again (fair Lady) my meat, drink, manners, yea, and my very countenance; Insomuch, that onely my request, and prayers unto the Gods, is even this, that they would so enchant that heart of yours, that you would at length give consent unto me your vassal, that I might not only serve you, but also delight you in all those pleasures you are ordained unto, If Lady, you refuse me, & cast me off, denying these my unrestless thoughts (than

which

which nothing will sooner cut my heart in sunder) I can look for nothing but present death, and rather covet therein to be locked fast, as in a Prison, than receive a denial from those your fair lips. Alas! (fair Lady) you are renowned in all the gifts of Nature: Fair, Amiable, Courteous, Gentle, and also Youthful, be not then the cause that I should determine my life by losing your love but rather grant what I desire, and thereby make me for ever yours in hearty affection. But Lady, happily you will urge, how dare you to offend the Gods in this unlawful act? To this, fair Lady, I answer, I am one of the Vicars of the Gods upon earth, and therefore it wholly rests in my power, to absolve you from your sins, and injoyn your Pennance: which trust me Lady, shall fall out to be but very easie, so you grant me love.

These speeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto, out of a grave and prudent carriage, made unto this perjur'd Priest, this excellent reprehension and answer. Ah, thou false, unjust, disloyal, & Devilish Priest, stain to all thy profession: How darest thou once open thy perjured mouth to such a mass of villanies, as thereon may ensue: First, as I may say against the sacred order; Secondly, but most principally, against the Majesty of that Emperor that ever nourished thee in the bond of tender compassion and love, and hath raised thee to great Dignities, far unfit for such a Devil incarnate: And from whom may justly proceed the sentence of condemnation, both on thee and me, if he should but understand thy lascivious and wicked practises. Thou (I say) devil, and worse than devil) thou that shouldest be unto me instruction, and also a guide to my life and conversation, in this thou goest about my utter ruin and destruction, by thy evil conditions, even beyond that good expectation which the Emperor trusteth to be in thee; O never grant (O ye Gods) that the blood of France, from whence I am descended, nor the Emperor my loving Lord, should be so dishonored either by me in my body, or through my privity in any other manner: O false accursed Man, behold whereunto thou wouldest deliver me: First, unto the utter ruin & spoil of mine honor; next, shut up my body in unremoveable shame for ever amongst men; and lastly bring my soul into the Jaws of death & the devil. Let fall, I say, all these thy vile and devilish provocations to lust, and leave for ever hereafter to solicite me, or any other vertuous

creature

creature on this manner, which if thou further prosecute unto me, then canst thou look for nothing but a shameful downfal, and a most damnable death. Therefore with this answer depart, and see that ye attempt me no more.

This angry farewel of the worthy Empress, stung the Priest at the very heart, but at that time durst make no further reply unto the fair Lady concerning love, but as a man all composed of rage and great fury, he then departed, discontent at this his most unfortunate and unhappy chance. At the last, when he could no longer hold, he excused himself unto the Lady, craving pardon for these his bold, saucy and rash follies committed, but yet could find no remedy to restore his honor. Thus being sore troubled in mind divers & sundry ways, he resolved what to do upon revenge against this innocent, which he accordingly effected by Treason against the Lady. And seeing the Emperor knew nothing in this matter from the Empress Bellisant, how the Arch-Priest would have inticed her to dishonor, and would have drawn her to disloyalty to the Emperor, but he could not, therefore he began to accuse her unto the Emperor for divers crimes, as hereafter more at large followeth to be spoken in the next ensuing Chapter.

CHAP. III.

How the Arch-priest having received this repulse at the hands of *Bellisant*, to save his own Honour practised Treason against the Innocent Lady.

THe Arch-Priest having now begun to set abroach his Devilish Practises, began to bethink him how he might effect what he had determined, and also preserve the Reputation of his former honors which the Emperor had bestowed upon him: whereupon at last he resolved, that he would cunningly, under the Cloak of Dissimulation bear fair weather towards the Emperor, as also seemed to shew how great a care he had of his preservation, & to make known his loyalty and watchful care that he ever had towards the welfare of his estate and person. So it befel, that on a day when he espyed a fit opportunity, and taking the Emperor all alone, he began to break with him on this manner, as followeth.

Right

Right High and Mighty Emperor, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount & highly esteem of the many and innumerable Favours, and great kindness which I have always received from your Mighty Highness: Wherefore as Duty doth always bind me, I am ever most watchful over the passages of your estate, in which I now stand by you appointed: But especially in that you have made me sole Commander in your House, and therein trusted me above all other; Therefore it is my Duty, to bewray unto you all those carriages that any way concern your High and Mighty Person: wherefore I beseech your Highness to give ear to that which I shall now disclose unto you, for I had rather suffer all the torments of death, than for to hide any thing from you: & the rather, for that it nearly toucheth your person, profit and honor. O Emperor, thus it is, Bellisant your Wife, and Sister to the King of France, she whom you have advanced to this state and dignity, faileth in the Duty and Loyalty which she oweth unto her dread Lord: for she wandreth in her love, giveth that unto another, which is proper only to your self: To name the Person unto your Majesty I will not, for you know I am a sacred Priest, and may not seek the blood of any man: but yet know for certain, that by the way of confession I came unto the light thereof, whereof I neither ought nor will bewray the name of him that thus usurps your Bed: but let it suffice, there is not a more unclean & lascivious woman liveth in your Court or Kingdom, whereby your life is in danger, your honor defamed, and my duty towards you approved by what I have told you. My advice therefore is, to be wary of your Person, and correct this her folly, but yet mildly & wisely, always with the preservation of your Honour. For will it not be a great shame among the Princes of the Earth, that you, having take a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for her beauty is incomparable, her nobleness and wisdom is not to be outshined by any earthly Lady, and she to prove a Whore: and what worse is, one who daily desireth your death, which grieves my heart to think upon.

The Emperor having heard this long accusation, little mistrusted the treachery of this Arch-priest, but gave credit to all his fair, but false words, and therewithal became extream pensive and sad: that his trust in her beauteous Love, had been thus deceived. At last,

having many days in many places uttered forth many diſcontented geſtures, words and ſighs, and many grievous acclamations, even in the Emperial Pallace, he gave reſt a while unto his diſcontented Paſſions: but wakened revenge to wait upon a fitter opportunity. And upon a day entering into the Chamber of his fair Lady Belliſant, without ſpeaking any word to her at all, in a moſt fierce, rude and unmannerly order, took his Lady by the head, and pulling her by the hair, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the ground in ſuch a horrid manner; that the blood beſmear'd all her face in moſt inhumane ſort. The Lady receiving from her Lord ſuch unlookt for welcome, cried out in lamentable manner, and as well as ſhe was able began to ſay: Alas (my dear Lord) what moveth you to this unwelcome out-rage? I call all the Gods to witneſs, I never did any thing in my life, either againſt your honour or life, or ever proſtituted my body to any ſtrangers lode. The Emperor not being thus ſatisfie', Replyed, ſaying: Thou Whore, I am too well informed of thy proceedings, and curſed be the day and hour that ever I ſaw thy deceivable Face, and therewithal, without all pity daſhed her head againſt the ground, leaving her ſpeechleſs, inſomuch that all the Damoſels, her attendants, thought ſhe had been quite bereft of life. Upon this there aroſe up in the Court a moſt pittiful out-cry, which the Counſellors and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran ſpeedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a Trance; at which diſaſter all amazed, ſome ran to take up the dead Body of the Empreſs, others took upon them to ſpeak unto the Emperor, thinking thereby to ſtay the fury of this undeſerved rage, whoſe words unto him were as followeth.

Alas (dread Soveraign) what may be the cauſe of this your ſudden paſſion in delivering unto danger of death, this ſo modeſt, chaſte and noble a Lady? a Lady ſo beloved of all degrees, and in whom was never ſeen the leaſt ſpark of diſhonour, neither towards you nor any in this Empire: Wherefore our requeſt unto you is, that you would moderate your wrong conceived anger againſt this harmleſs Lady. The Emperor nothing for all this relenting, anſwered; Speak no more, for I know, I ſee, I hear, how cunningly ſhe hath deluded me: therefore move me no further, for I am fully purpoſed to deliver her over to death, and he or they who ſhall hereunto gain-ſay, I ſhall

make

make him partaker in death with this wicked and diſloyal ſtrumpet.

Theſe words were no ſooner uttered, but up roſe a Worthy, Wiſe and Couragious bold Baron, & ſpake unto the Emperor after this manner. Right worthy Sir, I could wiſh you to be well adviſed before you proceed further againſt this Lady, who is your eſpouſed wife, ſiſter to a great King, namely, Pepin K. of France, who when he ſhall hear of this wrong done to her, will out of a couragious heart, & a brotherly affection, muſter up all his Pen of War, and ſuddenly ſurprize all our Towns, Houſes, Wives & Children, forgetting Mercy, and only purſuing revenge upon us for theſe merciles and cruel deeds unto his Siſter. Again, conſider on the other ſide, that the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous ſo rudely to ſmite and wound her on this manner wherein you have proceeded againſt her: The worthy Baron having thus ended his advice, the Lady ſuddenly fell upon her knees before the Emperor, & in tears very ſubmiſſively and lamentably thus ſhe ſpake:

Alas (my Lord) take pity on an innocent Lady, for I am ſo free from any evil act, as I never ſo much as thought any evil againſt your perſon or dignity: at leaſt, my Lord, if your compaſſion be quite diſſinct from pitying me, yet pitty the fruit of my Body, for I am great with child by you, of which the Gods grant me a joyful delivery. If nothing can appeaſe your anger towards me, then let my body be impriſon'd in ſome ſtrong Tower, till the time of my delivery, & then do with my body what pleaſeth you, ſo the fruit of my body may be kept ſafe. In this dolorous paſſion ſhe proceeded ſo far, that what with her ſighs & tears following one the other, it would have grieved the ſtonieſt heart that ever reſted in the boſome of the vileſt Tyrant that ever Reigned.

All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperor, who was ſo wholly bewitched with the Falſe and Traiterous Accuſation of the Arch-Prieſt, that all Lenity ſet apart, he burſt out in this manner: Thou falſe Strumpet, the child thou goeſt withal is to me no joy; but rather great diſhonour, for thy Behaviour & thy Diſloyalty hath made ſuch a ſeparation between us, that noting thy diſſolute life, thou haſt made another partner in my love: The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mittigate the Rage of the Emperor, by a common conſent removed her out of his preſence into another Chamber, ſhe be-

ing unto her all the favour they could both in action and gesture, although her fair face was sore deformed and besmeared with blood: having thus conveyed her away; the Ladies that were attendants, fetched water to wash her face, and did all they could to revive her everdying spirits. Being thus in another chamber, in comes Blandiman her Squire, who beholding her in this disfigured manner, for very pity the water trickled down his cheeks, & at the last began his speech in this manner,

Ah Madam, I plainly see that you are traiterously handled, and wish that the Gods would throw down their malignant curses upon that person that hath thus purchased your extream miseries; but gentle Lady, take comfort unto you, & trust me, if you will be ruled by me, I will conduct you back again into France, towards your Brother K. Pepin, who gave me and my service unto you, to attend you in all these misfortunes, all which I will to the utmost of my power undertake. Sweet Lady, follow my counsel, and free your self out of danger, for be you assured, that if here you stay, the Emperor will prosecute Revenge upon you, and in the end bring you unto a shameful Death.

Unto this the sorrowful Lady made this Reply; Ah Blandiman, I know thy faithful service towards me, but yet if I should follow thy advice, and steal out of this Country secretly, it would argue me guilty of all that infamy the Emperor throweth upon me, and thereby yield me guilty of the deed: Believe me Servant, I had rather dye all the deaths the world can lay upon me, rather than to bear the blame of that wherein I am innocent.

By this time the Emperors Choller was somewhat pacified, by means of his Lords and Barrons that attended, insomuch that he caused Bellisant to be quickly brought before him: when she was come his heart trembled and fretted for very anger that he durst not put her to death, fearing the puissance and might of her Brother K. Pepin, and therefore burst forth into these speeches: Thou false and accursed woman, by whom mine Honour is brought in Question: I take the Gods to witness, were it not for thy Brothers sake, the valiant Pepin King of France, I would make thee fry in the fire, as an example to all fair Ladies, but for his sake I spare thy life, stand forth and hear thy judgment. I banish thee out of my Country & Empire,

pire, expreſly commanding, that without any delay, to morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou ſhalt ever be ſeen here any more. I aſſure thee thou ſhalt ſuffer death in all extremity: Alſo, I ſtraightly command that none of my Country dare be once ſo hardy as to give aid, or accompany you, ſave only your ſervant Blandiman, whom you brought with you out of France. Go, get thee preſently out of my ſight, for thou ſhalt never more ſleep in my boſome. The Emperor having pronounced ſentence againſt her, the Empreſs Belliſant, accompanied with her ſervant Blandiman, ſpeedily haſted to horſe. Being thus mounted, and then paſſing through the fair City towards one of the gates thereof, there met her people in great multitudes, of all degrees, much lamenting the loſs of ſo fair a Lady, and ſo lovely an Empreſs. When ſhe came to the utmoſt part, even ready to go out of the gates of the City, there was heard ſuch a lamentable howling of mournful voices, that the like was never heard in the City of Conſtantinople. When ſhe was out of the walls of the City, and but newly entred into the wide fields, ſhe began to fall into a womanly fit of bitter weeping, to ſee how ſhamefully and diſhonourably ſhe was handled, cauſeleſs. Again, to think upon her birth, and the Imperial Dignity from whence ſhe was fallen, as alſo to account the misfortune wherein ſhe was like to finiſh the reſt of her days, it drave her at laſt from tears, to utter her griefs in theſe words, Alas, in what unhappy hour was I born, to fall from ſo high eſtate, to ſo low an Object of Poverty as I am now in: Woe is me, the unhappieſt among Women, now are all my joys turn'd Topſie-Turvy, my laughter is turn'd into weeping, my Songs converted into ſighs: Inſtead of Cloath of Gold, wherewith I was wont to be cloathed, now I am glad of all manner of mean attire, my precious Stones of ineſtimable value are all taken from me, and Pearls of Tears ſtand over all my garments. O you fields and woods, to you I make my moan, for other company I have none, conſider my exile, and help to bewail my misfortune: O would the Gods had pitied my diſtreſs, and made me the pooreſt among Creatures, then had not fortune given me ſo foul a fall, at leaſt, my poor Eſtate would never have grieved me: Wherefore doth the beauteous Sun ſend forth his beams on a wretch ſo miſerable? why doth the Earth bear ſuch a creature, that is compoſed of calamities? It is not poſſible for my Tongue to tell out my

hearts

hearts sorrow: O wretched man (whatsoever thou art) that by thy wicked treason hath brought me to this downfal, I may well curse thee with bitterness of heart, for by thee only am I made thus unfortunate. Ah, my Brother, what shouldest thou do with such a woful wight to thy Sister: It had been better I had never been born, than that I should prove such a stain to thy Kingly House. As she was thus complaining to her secret heart, the anguish thereof struck her into a swound as she sat on horse-back, and was ready at that instant to have fallen off her horse, ere her servant could alight & recover her; but he used all the speediest means for her recovery: at last she coming unto her self again, he said unto her: Alas Madam, be not so discomforted, neither let despair so far seize upon you, but trust ye that the Gods will keep and defend you, for they are ready to aid and assist the innocent. Having thus spoken, he suddenly spyed a fountain, towards the which he and his Lady took their way, and being come near thereunto, he set her down thereby, to ease and refresh her long over-tyred senses. Here at this Spring leave we the Lady and her Squire, and turn we now to the traiterous Arch-Priest who was the cause of all these treacherous and evil practises.

CHAP. IV.

How the Arch-priest put on him the habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress *Bellisant*, who was lately Banished.

The Arch-Priest having now wrought the banishment of Fair Bellisant, thought with himself now he should surely accomplish his desire: wherefore in all haste he changed his white Rochet into a Coat of Steel, and begirt unto his side a Sword; and being thus accoutred, he suddenly was mounted upon a Milk-white Steed, the fairest that could be had in all *Constantinople*: Being thus mounted, he made after her with all Expedition, inquiring of all he met, which way the Lady Bellisant was taken, who gladly told him which way she lately passed. After some few hours riding, at last he came to a great spacious Forrest and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady. It chanced that as he was riding forward, casting his eye aside, he presently espied the Lady with her Servant Blandi-

man

man, ſitting by a Fountain, full of heavineſs, lamenting her miſerable fortunes, Blandiman uſing all the means he could to Comfort her.

This falſe Prieſt from forth his Beaver, well perceived it to be the Lady, but by reaſon of his diſguiſe, ſhe could not imagine him to be the Arch-Prieſt, her Enemy: but coming nearer her, ſhe ſoon diſcryed him, and being ſtruck with a ſudden fear, ſpake thus to her ſervant: Alas (quoth ſhe) I well perceive this to be the falſe Arch-prieſt, that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, leſt he be come to do me further Villany. Lady (quoth Blandiman) baniſh fear, for if he come after us to do you further harm, I will encounter him body for body, even as long as life laſteth: By this time that they had ended their Speech each to other, the Arch-prieſt was ready to alight from his horſe to ſalute the Lady in all courteous behaviour; and after he had made himſelf known unto her, he began to ſay unto her after this manner:

Right dear Lady, and our late Honoured Empreſs, ſithence thy caſe is ſo pitiful, as to ſuffer Baniſhment by ſentence given againſt thee by the Emperor, ſo it is, That if thou wilt give me Entertainment in thy Love, accept me into thy Favour, and to grant what I have long ſought at thy hands, I will bring it to paſs that the Emperor ſhall again recal thy Baniſhment, and make thy greatneſs of State ſhine more bright then ever before: Therefore adviſe you well, for I Proteſt that I offer to you, is onely tending to your good and Advancement. Ha! (quoth the Lady) thou Diſloyal and Traytorous Adverſary, I have no great cauſe to beſtow Love, where my life hath been put in jeopardy. It is onely thou that haſt wrought my overthrow, and thou it is, that makeſt me to ſpend the remnant of my days in more miſery then ever Lady is able to indure. Lady (quoth he) utter not forth ſuch Curſes againſt me, for I am come to you, not to vex or trouble you, but to heap upon you more joys than ever you as yet in all your Life enjoyed: and in ſpeaking theſe words, he bended his body to the Lady, thinking to have killed her; but Blandiman perceiving his intent, ſuddenly ſtarted between them, and gave the Arch-Prieſt ſo mighty a Stroak that he felled him to the Earth, and with the Violence of the blow, brake out one of his Teeth: The Arch-Prieſt had no

ſooner

soner recovered himself from the ground, but suddenly betook him to his sword, which Blandiman perceiving, betook him to a Glave which he had about him, whereupon grew a sore and dangerous fight between them.

This encounter lasted so long that they were both wounded, but still they continued fighting, till at last it chanced a Merchant came by that way, who perceiving a far off their fierce encounter, cryed out with a loud voice, in this manner: Lords, Lords, (qd. he) leave off and shew the cause of this your variance, & I shall do my best to end this controversie. Sir, (qd. Blandiman) let us first try our right by our weapons, & afterwards we will be ruled by words. But the poor Lady could no longer bear silence, but began to tell the Merchant as followeth. Alas (quoth she) as you ever pitied woman, pitty my case; for this Man whom here you see armed, is the false & Traiterous Arch-Priest, that hath followed me to rob me of mine Honour, and force me to his wicked and unsatiable Lust; Also, this is he that hath made a separation between me and the Emperor my Lord and Husband. The Merchant hearing her lamentable tale, pitied her Misery, and began thus unto the Arch-Priest: Sir Priest, leave off your enterprize, & dare not so much as to touch this innocent Lady, for if the Emperor did but understand this villany, he would soon end thy life in infamy, as thou well deservest. As soon as the Arch-priest had heard his speech, he forsook his combat, & fled as fast as he could through the wood, for fear of being further known, being prevented of his purpose toward the Lady: though he conveyed his body out of sight, yet his villanies were afterwards disclosed. After his departure the Lady was forced to stay still in the wood all sorrowful, with her wounded servant. The Merchant staid with them some little time, bewailing the hard hap of the Lady, yet comforted her, saying, Alas Lady! I see that this Arch-priest hath falsely betrayed you, and brought you in hatred with the Emperor, but I will promise you, that if I live I will bewray all these treacheries to the Emperor, & bring the Traitor to a shameful death, and so taking leave, I commend you to the Gods, wishing that in these extremities you would be patient, and comfort your self in these your sorrows: so with many thanks for his aid from Blandiman, the Merchant departed.

The Merchant having left them, Blandiman set the Lady upon her horse,

horſe, and himſelf on his, ſo riding on together, they came unto a Lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight days, during which time her ſervant was recover'd of his wounds, and then forward towards France, the Lady ſtill ſorrowful and complaining in this manner: Alas Blandiman, what may my Brother, & the Peers of France think of this, when they ſhall underſtand that I am expelled Greece for ſuch a diſhonourable deed, and as a common Harlot, baniſhed from the Emperor of Conſtantinople? Alas! I am perſuaded that the King my brother will eaſily entertain it, that I am guilty of the deed, & in his anger care not to deliver me over to death. Lady, (quoth he) be not thus diſcouraged, but truſt in the Gods, who will revenge your injury, and pay it home upon the offenders head. During the time of theſe diſcourſes, they had paſſed many Countries and regions, till at laſt they came into France, and paſſing by Orleance, they took their way towards Paris, where King Pepin was accuſtomed to ſojourn. So entring into a Forreſt near unto Orleance, there hapned new Miſeries unto this Empreſs, of which more hereafter enſueth.

CHAP. V.

How *Belliſant* in her Baniſhment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whoſe Names were *Valentine* and *Orſon*, and how ſhe loſt them.

BElliſant (as before you heard) being with Child, was ſuddenly overtaken in the Forreſt. The time of her delivery being come, cauſed her to forſake her Horſe, and begin to complain to her ſervant on this manner. Alas (quoth ſhe) help, help, I ſay, to lay me down ſoftly under yonder great Tree; and when I am laid, make haſte & find me the help of women, whereſoever thou canſt get any, for I can go no further, my pains ſo much increaſe in multitudes upon me.

Blandiman her ſervant did as ſhe commanded, & for that he knew not how to find the ſame place again, he ſet a ſpecial mark, that he might the readier come thither again: and ſo betaking him to Horſe, he rode forth ſwiftly to ſeek ſome Woman to help this Diſtreſſed Lady.

He being gone the Lady was left comfortleſs all alone without

succour of any creature, so that at last she was delivered of two fair Sons in the Desolate forrest. These Children were no sooner come into the World, but a fresh misery, worse then all the rest that she had endured, happened to this Lady, for as she lay upon the earth under the tree, & her two Infants by her, suddenly came to her a huge Bear, most terrible to behold, & took up one of the Infants in her Mouth, and with great pace hasted into the thickest of the Forrest: This strange and unlookt for accident, frighted the distressed Lady to the soul, that she cryed out most lamentably, getting up upon her hands and feet, to hasten after the aforesaid Bear, which was quickly got out of her sight. But alas! it little availed her to make any further pursuit, for she never came unto the sight of the Child, till by mi-

racle

racle it was at length diſcloſed. So long wandred this Lady up and down from place to place, weeping and crying out for her Child, that being over-wearied with travel, ſhe fell into a great ſickneſs, inſomuch that at the laſt ſhe was thereby near deprived of her life, and immediately fell into a ſwound upon the cold earth, as if ſhe had yielded up the Ghoſt. In this extaſie, leave we her, and now proceed to the other Child, which ſhe left under the Tree.

It hapned the ſame day that her Brother King Pepin had taken his Journey from Paris (accompanied with divers great Lords and Barons) towards Conſtantinople, to viſit his Siſter Belliſant, and ſtriking through Orleance, he made ſuch haſte, that he entred into the ſame Foreſt whereas his baniſhed Siſter was lately delivered of her two Children, but knowing nothing what had hapned. Now as the King paſſed through this Foreſt, he eſpyed lying under a tree alone, the other Son of Belliſant, which when he ſaw, he ſaid unto his Attendants: My Lords, by the appointment of the Gods, ſee I have here found a fair incounter, even a Child. By the Gods (ſaid the Lords) you ſay truth. Why, ſaid the King, take it up, and it ſhall be brought up at my charge ſo long as it liveth, and it ſhall want no manner of attendance, but be uſed as it were mine own. For if it lives until it comes to Years eſtate, I will endow it with Lands & Poſſeſſions after the moſt nobleſt manner: and therewithal calling unto him one of the Squires, gave him the whole charge thereof, ſaying to him on this manner; Hold thee, bear thou this Infant to Orleance, ſee it baptized, provide a good Nurſe for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto; the King little ſuſpecting that this child was his Nephew.

The Eſquire as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to Orleance, cauſed it to be baptized, and gave it his own name, called Valentine. After, he ſought out a Nurſe for the Child, and gave it great attendance, according to the Kings command. This done, the King proceeded on his journey toward Conſtantinople, to ſee his lovely and beauteous Siſter Belliſant, but e'r he could paſs through the Foreſt, he chanced to meet with Blandiman, accompanied with a Woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her greateſt Extremity of Child-Birth: Blandiman eſpying the King, knew him, and ſuddenly alighted from his

horſe, doing his duty unto him, the King perceiving it to be Blandiman, aſked what good news from Conſtantinople, & above the reſt, how doth our Siſter Belliſant? Blandiman anſwered: Moſt Gracious Soveraign, I bring you but little tydings, yet thoſe I bring are bitter and ſharp: For (amongſt the reſt) I muſt tell you ſtrange News of your loving Siſter, and how ſhe fares: wherefore ſo it is, That by force of Treaſon, and falſe ſuggeſtion of the Curſed Arch-Prieſt of Conſtantinople, your Siſter is baniſhed out of the Emperors Court and Dominions, and but for the great mercy of the Lords of the Emperors Court, and others, ſhe had bæn publiquely put to death, and burnt to aſhes in the ſight of all the people.

King Pepin having heard the lamentable Relation of Blandimans report, being exceeding outragious and fierce in anger (and yet ſorrowful withal) brake out in ſpeech moſt bitterly againſt her, on this manner: Now by the Gods, quoth he, I hold the Emperor no upright Judge, in that he ſpared the life of my Siſter: for I ſwear, that if I had her here now in my poſſeſſion, I would not reſt, till by death I had made her an example to all falſe Ladies, while the world endureth: and therewithal commanded all his train of Lords, and others, to ſtay their journey of going forward, and make their return back again to Paris, for the grievous offences of my Siſter, here ſtays my journey, and ſo he departed, without further asking any more queſtions, but turning his horſes head, ſorrow overcame his courage, and at laſt made him break forth into theſe words: Ha (quoth he) how many men are deceived in women? Now am I utterly prevented of all my purpoſes, for my only hope reſted in the modeſty of my Siſter Belliſant, yea, and in her ſtood all my joys & pleaſure: Again, to have had the Emperor Alexander ſtill my Brother, & faſt friend at all affaies, and in all my neceſſities, was my only hope and joy of heart, and now behold by her I am diſappointed, defamed, and ſhut out into Eternal diſhonor. And ſo in that diſtruſt and melancholly, K. Pepin returned again towards Orleance. When Blandiman perceived the courage of the King to be thus daunted, he durſt relate no further news of the Lady Belliſant, but leaving the King took his way towards the Tree, where he lately left her in great pain of Child-birth: being come thither, he ſought her every where, but could hear no tydings of her: wherefore being ſorrowful, he knew not what way to take,

Being

Being in this extaſie, at laſt he tyed up his horſe to a thorn-Tree, and began again to make a narrower ſearch than before; wherein he was ſo vigilant, that anon he eſpyed her, finding her flat upon the earth, in a manner ſpæchleſs for very grief of heart that ſhe had loſt her Child, which the Bear had violently borne away from her. Blandiman being glad, that now at laſt he had found her, kindly embraced her, and taking her up in his arms from the cold Earth, ſet her upon her feet, and began thus unto her: Alas (dear Lady and Miſtris) how happened you to ſtray thus far from the place I left you in?

The Lady looking upon him with a ghaſtly countenance, replyed thus, Ah Blandiman! my dolors and diſtreſſes daily increaſe upon me; for thou wert no ſooner departed to get me the help of ſome woman-kind, but I being delivered of two Babes, a ravenous Bear from the Foreſt aſſailed me, and bare away one of them. I, although weak, making what poor ſhift I was able, followed that Ravenous beaſt, thinking by ſtrong hand to have recovered again my loſs, but all in vain, I could not overtake the Bear, nor wanting my ſtrength, recover back again to the Tree, where I left my other Infant. Lady (qd. he) the other Infant? Why I my ſelf but lately came from the Tree, and I am well aſſured that there lay no Infant there, nor near thereabout. How (quoth the Lady) no Child under the Tree? With theſe words ſhe was ſo inwardly wounded, that ſhe fell down in a ſwound, which Blandiman eſpying, ſaved her (in what he could) and fell into brimiſh tears for grief and ſorrow, to ſee his Lady ſo extreamly plunged, and overwhelmed, and at laſt led her towards the Tree, where ſhe had left the Child, but when ſhe ſaw the other Child alſo gone, think then what dolour of heart the poor Lady endured; in the midſt of all which ſorrows, ſhe thus beſpeak.

Alas (quoth ſhe) can there be in the World a more deſolate wretch? on every ſide compaſſed with grief, yea; and all inſupportable Sorrows; But alas Emperor, thou art the cauſe, and haſt been the only means even to deliver me over even to death, and that wrongfully, without cauſe on my part, and only by deceiveable counſel haſt thou bereft me of thy company; but here I call all the Gods to witneſs, that I was never faulty to thee in my body, nor diſobedient unto thee in any point, wherefore once again I am forced to cry out for vengeance upon the offenders head, whoſoever. Firſt, for my Diſgrace;

next

next, for my Baniſhment, and now laſtly for the loſs of my two Babes, iſſued from the Blood Royal of the Emperor of Conſtantinople: but ſeeing all theſe miſeries have even tyed themſelves upon my very heart. Come death, and finiſh what ſorrows do but prolong. All this while Blandiman was ear-witneſs of all theſe piteous plaints, inſomuch that he grew even weary of her wailing, & in the beſt manner he could, comforted her dying Spirits, by falling to intreat her, that ſhe would ſomewhat give over her moans, and betake her ſelf to her feet: whereunto ſhe gave conſent, he accompanied with a woman he had brought with him, came into a Neighbouring Village, whereas they lodged and nouriſhed her, till ſhe had ſomething recovered her ſtrength, and in ſome meaſure forgotten the depth of her miſeries. Blandiman began to break with his Lady on this manner: Lady (quoth he) it was my chance in looking you in the woods, to light upon your Brother King Pepin, who demanded of me what tydings? But his brows were bent, & full of anger againſt you; wherefore Lady, my counſel is, that you make not towards him, for by that countenance I well perceive you ſhall have but ſlender welcome: for upon further queſtions demanded, & anſwered, ſo ſoon as he heard me tell that the Emperor had exiled you, he lightly gave credit that yours was the fault, and therefore he lays all the blame on you: O! (quoth the Lady) now what I moſt feared is come to paſs, and I well perceive that I am beſet with adverſaries on every ſide: well, be it as it may be, the Emperor hath exiled me without cauſe, what then ſhall I do; I will never return again to Paris, but take my way into ſome remote Land, where my body with my faults ſhall be ſmothered: for my brothers anger is grown ſo great, that he could willingly deliver me over to Death, therefore it is better to fly and to ſave my Life, then fall into the fury of ſo angry a Brother. This doleful ſpæch ſhe delivered in tears, which Blandiman perceiving, ſaid unto her: Lady leave off your tears, for be aſſured of my faithful Fidelity, and here I offer my ſelf, life, and all to be at your Service, go whither you pleaſe. Why then (quoth the Lady) ſince thou art ſo reſolute, let us reſolve upon ſome ſtrange adventure, and therewithal paſſed forth to expoſe themſelves to future dangers; where now we ſhall be forced to leave them with ſorrowful hearts, & return again to ſpeak ſomething of the Bear that carried away one of the Children.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Bear that bare away one of the Lady *Belliſants* Children.

THe Bear (as you have heard before) that had carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no Violence, but bare it unto her Cave, which was dark and obſcure: In this Cave the Old Bear had Four Young Ones, amongſt whom ſhe laid the Child to be Devoured, but mark the Chance, and you ſhall find it at laſt Miraculous, for all this while the Young Bears did do it no harm, but with their Rough Paws ſtroaked it ſoftly: The Old Bear Perceiving

they did not devour it, ſhewed a Bearish kind of favour toward it: inſomuch that ſhe kept it, and gave it ſuck among her young ones the ſpace of one whole year. This Child by reaſon of the nouriſhment it received from the Bear, became rough all over like a beaſt, and as he grew in ſtrength, began to range up and down in the woods, and when he met with other beaſts would ſmite them, and got ſuch Victory over them, that they began to ſhun the place wherein he came, he was ſo extream fierce amongſt them: and in this beaſt-like Eſtate paſſed he the term of fifteen years, growing up to ſuch ſtrength, that ſcarce any man or beaſt in the Foreſt durſt ſtir abroad, fearing to fall into his hands, leſt he ſhould put them to death, and after eat their fleſh, more like unto a ravenous beaſt, then any humane Creature: His name was called Orſon, becauſe a Bear had been his Nurſe, and alſo was grown rough like a Bear.

This Bear-man lived ſo long in the Foreſt, that none (were he never ſo hardy) durſt abide his preſence: the renown of this Wild-man grew ſo great, and ſpread ſo far abroad over all the Realm of France, that they of the Country round about chaſed and hunted him, but prevailed not, for he neither feared Weapons nor Engines, but paſſed through them all, ſnapping them in pieces: All this time he abode in the Foreſt, you muſt underſtand, he neither wore Garment, nor had any kind of ſpeech.

Here we leave the wild-man in the Foreſt, and look a little what became of the Lady Belliſant, and her Servant Blandiman; and we ſhall ſuddenly find them wandring and travelling through divers Lands and Countries, the Lady ever remembring and bewailing the loſs of her two Children, wiſhing that if it were poſſible, they might be ſtill in ſafety. But in the midſt of her ſorrowful wiſhes, yet ſhe paſſed on her weary Journey, ſometime by Sea, ſometime by Land, till at length ſhe came to a Port in Portugal, on the which did ſtand an invincible Caſtle, kept by a Gyant, called Ferragus, ſo great, & of ſuch puiſſance, that there was not a Horſe to be found could bear the living Trunk of this great Gyant.

It ſo happened at this Caſtle, that every Ship that paſſed by this Port was to pay tribute to this Gyant, which he himſelf did daily come aboard to receive. At length he came into the Ship wherein the Lady Belliſant, and her Squire had paſſed (for ſhe was laden withall

manner

manner of rich Merchandizes) ſo caſting his eyes about, he eſpyed Belliſant, which he kindly took by the hand, and lead her into the Caſtle to his wife (for he was married to a beautiful Lady.) Blandiman followed his Lady alſo, fearing the Gyant, but he behaved himſelf ſo nobly, that he did not offer her any violence, but preſented her to his wife, who received her gladly, and had great joy at the Gracious preſence of ſo beautiful a Lady. The Gyant having charged his wife to uſe her and Blandiman her Squire honourably. During her abode in the Caſtle ſhe would often ſhed tears, when ſhe bethought her of the loſs of her two Children; which the Lady of the Caſtle perceiving, would often comfort her in the beſt manner ſhe could, and ever placed her next her own perſon, for the joy and pleaſure that ſhe ever took in her company. Within this Caſtle ſhe tarried long time, and here we muſt leave her, and now we will return back again to tell you ſomewhat of the Emperor of Conſtantinople, and the falſe Arch-Prieſt.

CHAP. VII.

How by the Councel of the Arch-prieſt, new Cuſtomes, and Taxations were raiſed through the City of *Conſtantinople*, and how the Treaſon came to light.

ALexander the Emperor having ſhamefully expelled Belliſant his Wife, Siſter to K. Pepin, oftentimes repented him of the fact: but by the curſed counſel of the Arch-Prieſt, unto whoſe words the Emperor gave ſuch Credit continually, that what he ſpake was an Oracle in the Ears of the ſaid Emperor: Inſomuch that he continually heaped new Honours upon that Traiterous Prieſt, advancing him even above the higheſt in the Empire, and whatſoever he commanded, was effected. At laſt, having gotten all Power and Authority in his hands, he began to inhance the Cuſtomes and Taxes of the City of Conſtantinople, which exactions of his againſt all Reaſon, ſtruck even to the very hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the Reſidue of theſe his forced impoſitions, (it happened that according to their yearly Cuſtomes) there was held a great Part in the City, which falls out about the month of September. Hereunto reſorted many people for divers occaſions, eſpecially Merchants. The Fair or Part-day being come, the Emperor gave the charge thereof unto

this Arch-Priest, who accordingly provided himself, & for the same purpose armed 200 men to guard his own person: being thus accompanied he took his way into the City, to effect this new Charge which the Emperor had so lately bestowed upon him. It chanced so, that among the rest of them that sold wares, the Merchant was there present (of whom you have heard before) namely, the Merchant that came riding by the way whilst Blandiman (the Distressed Lady Belisaors Esquire) and the treacherous arch-Priest was Fighting: the arch-priest perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearful lest all his villany should now come to light: the Presence of this Merchant much troubled the arch-Priest, insomuch as he wished, (if it were possible) his Death, and would assuredly have effected the same by the Authority that he now had in his hands, but still he feared some great Tumult would arise thereby. Now mark what followed: This Merchant, among the rest, was richly furnished with all rich and costly wares, as Cloth of Gold, Silver, Silk, &c. Whereby he received great Wealth, and took more Money then any five Merchants beside: The Fair being ended, the arch-Priest sent forth his Officers to demand and Receive his accustomed duties due upon the sale of those Merchandizes: One Officer came unto this Merchant, and said: Sir, you must pay Ten-pence on every pound that you have taken, for so it is Ordained by the great Officer to whom it doth belong.

The Merchant hereat being angry, said, Curled be that Disloyal arch-Priest, for he is the only cause of these new raised exactions upon us: It had been good for all men, if he had long since had his Desert, and with shame and infamy had ended his Dayes: At which reproachful words against the arch-Priest, the Officer took his staff and smote the Merchant on the Head, that presently the blood gushed out. Then the Merchant feeling the blood about his ears, drew his Sword, and struck so hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his feet for dead. Upon this arose a great Rout throughout the fair, insomuch that the rest of the Officers coming up to help their Fellow, took the Merchant and brought him before the arch-Priest: The arch-Priest glad of this opportunity, would suddenly have put him to death, but the Merchant appealed to Justice, to have his cause tryed by the Law. The arch-Priest fearing the People, sent him away to

the

the Emperor, for nothing could ſatisfie him but his life: But mark, in ſeeking the Life of the Merchant, he purchaſed his own Death, as hereafter followeth.

The Arch-Prieſt cauſed the Merchant to be brought into the Emperors Pallace, whereas he in perſon ſat as Judge. The Emperor being ſet, the Arch-Prieſt brought his Advocate to Plead his Cauſe, which was to this effect, That the Merchant had committed Murther, & alſo had ſpoken many approbrious words againſt the ſaid arch-Prieſt: the Advocate having ended his Accuſation, the Merchant ſuddenly fell on his knees before the Emperor, and ſaid: Mighty and moſt Excellent Prince, out of your Benignity, give me but Audience to be heard, before theſe your Nobles here attending, and I ſhall unfold a matter of ſo great importance, that it touches your Perſon even in the higheſt Degree of Treaſon. Say on, ſaid the Emperor; Mighty Emperor, and my Lords all, I would adviſe you to make faſt the Gates round about this your Pallace, that none depart from this place: The Emperor did as he requeſted: Then ſaid the Merchant with a loud voice, Lords, Barrons, and Knights, all you that love the Honour of the Emperor and the Triumphant reign of his Perſon, attend my words; For the time is come that the treaſon of the Curſed Arch-Prieſt will now be revealed and come to Light. Then thus great Emperor, this is that curſed Man whom you have ever Nourished, and brought to great Honour, who hath deceived your truſt; for he it is that hath wrought all the Diſcord, betwixt you and your Vertuous Lady, whom you have baniſhed both from your Bed, Court, and Countrey, and by whom you have received more Diſhonour than ever he reaped honour from you; For it had been his part moſt of any to have nourished & advanced your Renown, & to have preſerved your honor, but contrarily he hath made my Dread Lord infamous by theſe his Wicked Projects, and brought upon you great ſcandal among all Nations: for he ſecretly and under-hand made Love to your Empreſs, but ſhe denyed him: the which he perceiving, that there was no likelyhood to accomplish his Deſire, it drove him into a thouſand Fears, leſt this his Diſloyal act ſhould come to light; and therefore deviſed to falſifie unto your Ears, her faithful love unto your Bed: Of all which his Falſe accuſati-

ons, I ſay here before you, and all your Lords and Barrons, that he lyeth like a Traytor, & for the more approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold the truth of what theſe eyes of mine were witneſſes.

It ſo happened on a Day (after the Baniſhment of the Empreſs Belliſant) as I was riding about my affairs, I chanced to travel through a Wood: at laſt paſſing along the way, I found this treacherous Prieſt transformed out of the habit of his Prieſthood into the ſhape of a Knight, even armed at all points ready for the Combate with the enemy. Drawing nearer and nearer, I might behold him in fight with another man unarmed, which at laſt I found to be Blandiman, Squire to the baniſhed Lady, who conducted her in the time of her Exile.

I perceiving they encountred one another ſo fiercely, began to call unto them, to give over their direful fight; but they little regarded what I ſaid: I did perceive the Lady pitiouſly weeping, and at laſt ſaid unto me thus: Gentle Merchant, and kind friend, lend me thy aid againſt this treacherous Arch-prieſt, that ſeeketh by force to rob me of mine honor. This is he, and only he, by whom I am baniſhed from my Emperors Bed & Country. With that I put ſpurs to my horſe, & ran between them to ſeparate them, which this Arch-Prieſt perceiving, ſuddenly fled into the Wood, being fully aſſured that I had knowledge who he was. Noble Emperor, it had been my part to have revealed this long before, but I durſt not open my mouth unto you, for fear his greatneſs would have outſwayed my truth, & ſo have brought my ſelf unto an untimely death.

The Emperor having heard this tale, ſighed, and at laſt fell into tears, in which tears he turned him unto the Arch-prieſt, relating his diſloyalty in this manner: Ah thou falſe ſervant (quoth he) have I ever ſtudied to do thee honor, and exalt thee to high dignities, & haſt thou requited all my love and truſt with diſloyalty & treaſons? well, I have ſeen now what I ever miſtruſted, thou haſt made me of all men moſt unhappy; but it is not ſo much thy fault as my own, thy treaſon hath bewitched me: in an evil hour I gave credit to thy falſe ſpeaking tongue, and thereby deſerve to carry the brand of my own folly.

The arch-Prieſt hearing the Emperor thus diſtempered, began to intreat his Highneſs not to be ſo impatient, neither to give credit to his ſlanderous tale that the Merchant had commenced againſt him: for

for (qd. he) he belyeth me, and I am no way guilty of that wherewith he accuſeth me: Thou lyeſt falſly (quoth the Merchant) thou canſt not excuſe thy ſelf in what I have charged thee withal: and if thou ſtand ſtill in the denial, I challenge thee by the ſingle Combate, to maintain the truth, and try my quarrel: and hereupon I throw down my Gage, & withal tender my body thereunto, for to make good what I have here ſpoken: and more than that, e re night ſhut in, I will deliver thy body to death, or yield my ſelf vanquiſhed.

The Emperor ſeeing the Merchant ſo reſolute, and to ſtand to the tryal of the combate, he ſaid: arch-Prieſt, it is time that either thou quit thy ſelf by anſwering this challenge, or to yield thy ſelf guilty of what hath been laid to thy charge. The arch-prieſt replyed on this manner: Mighty Emperor, I muſt let you underſtand, that to anſwer the Merchants Challenge, or take up Arms, is contrary to my place and calling, for I am a ſacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuſe to fight. Nay (qd. the Emperor) in this caſe no excuſe is to be admitted, but you muſt either fight, or yield your ſelf a traytor to our Crown & Dignity. At theſe words the arch-Prieſt was ſomewhat troubled in mind, yet at laſt he was fain to accept the Combate, becauſe the Emperor charged him ſo deeply: & beſides, he could have no excuſe admitted. So the Emperor commanded them both to ſafe keeping, till ſuch time he had ſent Letters to K. Pepin of France: but in concluſion the Traytor had his deſert, as hereafter followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Emperor by the Counſel of his Nobility, ſent for King *Pepin*, to ſee the Combate fought between the Arch-prieſt and the Merchant.

THe day of the Combate being appointed and the field prepared, tydings came to the Emperor, that King Pepin was come to Rome, to the aid of the Pope againſt the Infidels. The Emperor hearing thereof, by the grave counſel of the Lords, diſpatched Ambaſſadors thither, with comand to bring K. Pepin to Conſtantinople, meaning thereby to make him an eye-witneſs of theſe contentions, & of the cauſe of this combate, which was to prove the arch-Prieſt a traytor

tor, and also to hold the Emperor excused in that he had by his false accusations banished his Empress. The Ambassadors thus dispatched, you must imagine, that after long travel, at last they came to Rome, whereas they found King Pepin, as before was told them: King Pepin having heard of their coming, gave them entertainment appertaining to their several degrees: all which being done, the Ambassadours thus spake unto King Pepin. Great Lord, we present those Letters from *Alexander* your Brother, Emperor of *Constantinople*, our Lord and Master, of which we intreat a speedy Answer. King Pepin took the Letters graciously, and read them: And having throughly considered the Contents, with a loud voice, he said: My Lords (by the Gods) here is much matter of tydings, and also of as great admiration, The Emperor Alexander greets me well, & sends me word that my Sister Bellisant his betrothed Wife, hath been by him wrongfully Banished, and that by reason of a False arch-Priest unto whom he hath given too much trust: which Priest for these his treasonable Facts, is accused by a Merchant, and for tryal of the truth of this his accusation, will put himself in jeopardy of life, by single combate in open field, body to body, with this treacherous Arch-Priest. Now it is so fallen out, that the Day and place is ready for the tryal of his fact, whereby I shall be fully satisfied whether my Sister hath been guilty of that wherewith she hath been charged, and most shamefully cast forth into banishment: upon all which I vow by my Crown and Dignity, that if the Emperor be found to have offered her this indignity, without just cause, that I will be avenged against him in the extreamest manner that war can thunder forth against him. Having ended his speech unto his Lords in presence of the Ambassadors, he commanded with speed that every man should address himself to accompany him to Constantinople, to behold the manner of this Fight between the Merchant & the arch-Priest.

The Day of his departure from Rome being come, he takes his way towards Constantinople, where after some few days of travel, he safely arrived. The Emperor hearing of his comming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made triumphs to welcome him, for all were filled with joy at his approach; The Emperor mounted on horse-back, richly accompanied, marched out of the City

to

to meet his Brother King Pepin. At laſt they met: but the Emperor overcome with Sorrow and Tears at the remembrance of Belliſant, could not utter a Word. On the other ſide, Pepin being fiercely angred at what happened to his Siſter, gave no reſpect unto the Emperors tears, but proudly began to gird him on this manner: Emperor (quoth he) leave off theſe your lamentations, and ſhake off theſe weeds of ſorrow that you ſeem to wear for my Siſter Belliſant; for he that hath a Harlot unto his wife, I account him mad to grieve at her misbehaviour, and ſince my Siſter hath proved ſuch a one; let her go and take care of her ſelf, ſhe is not worthy of ſo much as one tear from ſuch an Eye of Majeſty.

Nay, nay, ſaid the Emperor, ſpeak not you evilly againſt your Siſter, for I am now fully perſwaded, that ſhe is compoſed of all vertue and true honeſty, and that againſt all equity, I have baniſhed her out of my Country. Think you ſo now (quoth King Pepin) then are you worthy of a double ſhame, if you do bewray unto the world your weakneſs, and what great fooliſhneſs remains in you, when as by the report of one man, and that a Traytor too, you would with ſuch rigor proceed againſt an innocent Lady, and ſo ſuddenly (like a common Harlot) throw her out into baniſhment, ſhame, & diſhonor, being of the Blood Royal of France. The Emperor hearing the K. to be ſo bitter againſt him, he was very ſorrowful, & ſaid unto him in this manner; Alas, my Lord, do not thus follow me with wrath and anger, but rather turn your tongue upon ſome milder ſaying, for to that intent have I ſent for you, that your own eyes may be a witneſs of the truth. 'Tis true (ſa. King Pepin) but it is all too late what now you ſay, for you have delivered over my ſiſter into the Worlds infamy, and that more is, even to baniſhment; and (for ought) I know to death it ſelf, for I know not whether ever I ſhall behold her face again, or not: Fie, fie, that you being ſo great a Perſon, ſhould be ſo affectionately born away, to give ſuch ſudden judgment againſt an innocent; I do confeſs, one may commit a foul and diſhonourable act, but repentance is able to make amends, and not ſo ſuddenly to overthrow their Dignity and Renoun: for that once loſt, whether it be right or wrong, it is never again poſſible to be recovered. Again, how little have you eſteemed

esteemed of the honour of my Kingly Office, judge you, when first without deliberation, & next without any knowledge given me, you have proceeded so against my Sister: I make it plain against you, that envy towards her and me, was the only cause of these false & unjust wrongs done against us. Whilst these words passed betwixt them, they were now entred Constantinople, where with great joy & gladness they were received of the Inhabitants. The Emperor would have had K. Pepin to have lodged with him in his Palace, but the K. denyed & caused his Train to lodge within the City, & he himself also. Then the Emperor caused many gifts & presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them: for K. Pepin thought of nothing but the dishonor done unto his Sister, & that the rather, for the whole City accounting her the Fairest, the most vertuous, & the chastest Lady in all the world, and that by injustice and treason she was banished.

CHAP. IX.

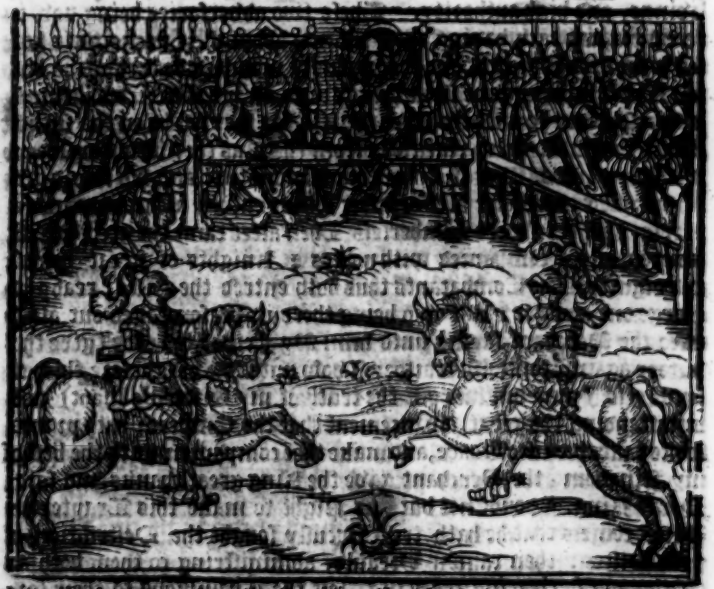
How the Merchant and the High-Priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing the Lady *Bellisant*, and what a glorious Victory did betide the Merchant.

NOW was the day appointed come for the Combat between the Arch-Priest and the Merchant: wherefore every thing was made in readiness, according to the Command of the Emperor. At last there came both the Combatants into the field and presented themselves before the Emperor. Being both before the Emperor, his Attendants (Knights and others) and the Arch-Priest armed in a most sumptuous Armor of proof, all imboss with Gold and Pearl, which made such a glittering shew, that it even dazled the eyes of the beholders. Being thus richly armed, the Arch-Priest came forth into the field, and took his place appointed him, at the one end of the List, appointed for that purpose: The Emperor beholding the Glorious shew that the Arch-Priest made in his arms, called forth the Merchant, causing him first to kneel down, & in the presence of the Assembly, dubbed him Knight. Then commanded he that a most rich armor should be put upon him in the presence of K. Pepin, who during the time he was arming, promising unto this Merchant, if he overcame the arch-Priest, to advance him to great livings,

livings, and high authority. These two adversaries being now in readiness, and each having their Blazon about their necks, their horses were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give battel: The Emperor gave strict charge unto all his Officers at arms to have a special eye unto the Arch Priest, for fear lest he on the sudden should flye the field, or run away from them, as they would answer it with their lives. The Merchant thus mounted, and his sword girt to him: first entred the Lists, after whom entred such abundance of people, that they were numberless. Then after came the arch Priest, sumptuously accompanied with nobles & Knights of great honour and dignity. The Combatants thus both entred the Lists, ready to charge one another: K. Pepin being there in person, called out aloud unto the Merchant, saying unto him: My Friend, the Gods give thee victory against this false traitor: I vow unto thee here before this assembly (so I may but find out the truth of my Sister Bellisant) notwithstanding the great advancement that the Emperor hath promised, to take thee into France, and make thee companion with the best of my Kingdom; the Merchant gave the King great thanks, and said; Dread King, I doubt not but this Night to make this Trayterous Priest confess that he hath treacherously sought the Destruction of your Sister: then came a Herauld, administring to them both an Oath, and so clearing the Lists, left the Champions to their fortunes.

Now are both the Combatants ready to set forth, and the Marshals of the Field brought each of them a Spear, which they no sooner had received, but they put Spurs to their Horses, and ran with such violence together, that their Spears were broken to their hands, then they began to set forward to another Course, charging each other with their Swords, in such violent manner, that with their fury they rebounded from their Armor to the Ground, cutting off whole quarters of their Coslets, and left them as a Prey for those that attended the fight.

The Arch Priest seeing himself so stiffly matched, gave over the Fight till towards the Evening, for such was the customs of the Country, that in any challenged combate either party might refuse to follow the Fight so eagerly, but that they might have a breathing-time, so the combatant were yielded vanquished before sun-set, or else



abide the ſentence of death, thinking thereby to weary out the mercy. Which the merchant perceiving, he prepared to receive the arch-priest courageously when he encountred him, which not being long after, the merchant ſo redoubled his ſtroaks, that he ſmote off one of his ears, & his ſteel Habergion, and with the violence of the ſame blow, the merchant's ſword fell from his hand; which the Arch-priest ſeeing, put ſpurs to his horſe, and charged him with ſuch violence, that he ran againſt the merchant's horſe, and thruſt out one of his eyes: the horſe feeling himſelf hurt, ran up and down as mad, leaping and curvetting ſo furiouſly that he unhors'd his rider: and ſo hard was the fortune of the merchant, that in his fall, his foot hung in the ſtirrop, whereby he was brought into great danger, the horſe hurrying him along the field, that all were very ſorrowful to behold this lamentable ſpectacle, & with the amazement thereof grew deſperate in their hopes. Pepin alſo was ſo diſcouraged at this unfalterous chance, that the tears did even trickle down his cheeks, uttering many ſilent ejaculations againſt the unkindneſs of fortune.

Now

Now that which was most miraculous, was, all this time that the Merchant was dragged up and down the field, the Arch-Priest could not inforce his horse to come up unto the Merchant, but fled out too & fro, whereby he could not make a prey upon the Merch. as he thought to have done. But see, at the last the Merchant's horse foundred and fell down, by which means the Merchant got his Leg from forth the stirrop, and at last got up on his feet like a valiant & hardy Champion: the Arch-Priest perceiving the Merchant had recovered his legs, came running with strong violence upon him, & thereby lent him 5 or six blows upon his head & shoulders, that the poor Merchant was even astonied. At last he was forced to give back to recover breath, & in a very little space, finding himself somewhat releived, he subtlely, & fiercely gave a fresh assault upon the Arch-Priest, against whom he struck with such violence, that the sword fell out of his hand, but he had first so wounded the Arch-Priest, that the blood ran through his Armor upon the earth. This so vexed the Arch-Priest, that he grew mad with rage, and turned his horse upon the Merchant, minding to have overrun him with his horse. But the Merchant observing his drift, prepared to receive him, and drawing a long knife, punch'd it into the belly of the horse, so that the horse being thus wounded, began to fling and leap, insomuch as the Arch-priest was in danger to be unhoust, and striving to save himself, he lost his shield. The Merchant espying him thus unarmed, ran hastily and caught up the Shield, and threw it away, so that he could no more recover it, that done, he made again towards his horse, & smote him into the belly with his sword, so that both horse and his rider came tumbling on the ground.

The Arch-Priest being thus unhorst, was very nimble to recover himself, but the Merchant watching all opportunity, lent him such a blow that as he began to rise, he laid him flat again upon the ground & leaping on him, pull'd off his helmet, thinking to have smitten off his head: The Arch-Priest seeing himself in such danger, said thus, Alas my friend, I pray thee take pity on me, & give me leave to confess my self, for I yield my self vanquish'd. The Merch. hereat was very courteous, and granted him his desire. The priest had no sooner got on his feet, but clasping the Merchant in his arms, threw him on the ground, and leapt upon him in most sudden outrage, saying thus to the Merchant: I have thee now at advantage, and from my

hands thou shalt not escape with life, if what I shall command thee thou do not effect. Ha! replyed the Merchant, hast thou thus betrayed me? Well, it is so, that now I stand at thy mercy, and that thou maist do with me what pleaseth thee, therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my life, I shall gladly do it. Then thus, go with me before the Emperor and King Pepin, & there openly, in the hearing of all men, testifie that thou falsely hast accused me, & that thereby I may be cleared of those false acclamations which by thy means have been brought upon me; all which if thou effectually accomplish, I swear and promise thee to save thy life, and besides, be a means unto the Emperor and his Brother, to buy thee Peace and forgivenels of this thy foul fact committed both against me and them also: May more, I swear to thee by the Faith of a Gentleman, and by the order of Priest-hood, to give thee a neece of mine in Marriage, who shall be to thee rich, fair, and of pleasant behaviour: and to conclude, thou shalt say more than ever any of thy kindred ever told, thou shalt be made more honourable and wealthy: Therefore now advise thy self, whether thou will be made happy in an honourable Life, or miserable in an untimely death. The Merchant having heard the Arch-Priests tale, was upon the suddain, exceeding sorrowful, & not without cause, but not knowing on the sudden what to resolve upon he at length thus answered: Sir Priest, your arguments are grounded upon good reasons, therefore I am ready to accomplish your Desires, so that you will be as mindful of your Oaths and Promises. In me, quoth the Arch-priest, there shall appear no fault. Why then, (quoth the Merchant) let us set forwards towards the Emperor, & there will I set you free from all those accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you. It is well, said the Arch-Priest, wherefore rise up then, and let us go together: the Merchant had no sooner goton his feet, but he began again afresh to open all the treason of the Arch-Priest, even to his Teeth, and again he took courage, & now would requite him in the same sawce he had served him before, & suddenly he clasping the Arch-Priest in his arms, he threw him down, & having him at advantage, he said thus, Arch-Priest seeing you have taught me to play my part, and therefore think no more upon confessions, for you shall confess to me or none. The Arch-Priest seeing himself beaten at his own weapons, began again to entreat, but the

Merchant

Merchant not regarding his words, preſently put out his eyes, and gave him ſo many deadly blows, that he made him ſure enough for riſing to do him any harm: then the Merchant called the Marſhals of the field, and ſaid, Lo, here you may ſee that I have done my beſt endeavour againſt the Arch-Prieſt, and if he be vanquiſhed, ſay ſo, for I am ſure I have brought him to ſuch a paſs, that I may kill him outright if I pleaſe; therefore my requeſt now unto you is, that you would conduct Alexander, Emperor of Conſtantinople, and King Pepin of France, hither to this place, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be ear-witneſſes of the confeſſion which the Arch-prieſt ſhall make unto them, & alſo to hear in what unjuſt manner he waged Combat againſt me.

The Marſhals did according to the requeſt of the Merchant, and then preſently came Alexander the Emperour, with King Pepin, & all the Nobles, even to the place where the arch-prieſt lay, all ſorrowful and fully vanquiſhed. Then the Emperor demanded of him the truth of the matter, which the Arch-prieſt confeſſed, declaring the whole plot of his villanies, and how by his means the Lady Belliſant had been wrongfully baniſhed. When the ſtanders by heard all the whole matter, a multitude of tears were ſhed on every ſide, but eſpecially the Emperor, for his lamentations were ſo violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitterneſs and hearty ſorrow: Now if the Emperor were ſo ſorrowful what may you think of K. Pepin her Brother? Alas, it was not without great cauſe, when they ſaw and knew that by too much truſt given to a treacherous Prieſt, they had loſt the vertuous Lady Belliſant. Between theſe 2 great Princes there was great joy and great ſorrow; joy to King Pepin, that his Siſter was found innocent and blameleſs; ſorrow to the Emperor, that he ſhould be the onely means (by falſe ſuggeſtions) of his Wives baniſhment.

At laſt, lamentations were laid apart: when they had heard all the confeſſions of the Arch-Prieſts treaſons, the Emperor conſulted with his Counſel that the traitor ſhould be put into a Caldron of hot burning Oyl, quick, and ſo finiſh his miſerable days, as he had traiterouſly ſought the life of that innocent Lady: So the Execution was ſuddenly to be done, and it being done, the aſſembly of people of all ſorts was diſmiſſed.

Afterwards

Afterwards King Pepin withdrew himself towards his lodging, but the Emperor sorrowful for what happened, came before King Pepin, and humbling himself at his feet, began thus to say: Alas, dear Brother, I am all sorrowful for this my error, in that I have so rashly committed such a detestable crime against you, my Lady your Sister, & the residue of these great Nobles your attendants: Let it suffice, that I behold my own folly: what shall I say? I can but crave pardon for my fault, and give my self into your hand, & do to me whatsoever pleaseth you: and for a further satisfaction, I render up into your hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining, for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not Master of mine own affections. Take it I say, for I will no longer be served, but during the rest of my life, will become a servant to thee or any, for no better have I deserved. K. Pepin perceiving the Emperor so passionate, & so humble minded, kindly took him from the ground, and before all his Lords, freely forgave him all Trespasses. So that before they parted, there was a general Peace concluded on both parties between them, and a most speedy course taken to send abroad into all parts of the world, to seek out the distressed lady Bellisant: thus all things setled in order, King Pepin prepared to take his leave of the Emperor, & so returned back again into his own Country.

CHAP. X.

How King *Pepin* returned from *Constantinople* into *France*, and after sailed to *Rome*, to fight the Sarazens that had surprized the City.

KIng Pepin having taken his leave of Constantinople (as you have heard) after a long journey, arrived in France, and so to Orleance, to refresh his long and tyred Spirits, tossed to and fro in melancholly and heavy Cogitations, for the woful mischance befallen unto his Sister Bellisant. Being thus safely arrived, and seated at Orleance; the King was right joyful, that at the last he had attained the place he so much desired, by reason that it was one of the goodliest Fortresses in the Realm of France. Being (as I said) come hither, he caused great Banquets to be made for his welcome home; which was accordingly performed.

In

In the midst of their Feastings and Revellings, the Esquire that had the charge of the Orphan Valentine, took and presented him before the King, saying unto his Majesty on this manner: Dread Soveraign, Lo, here I present before you the poor Orphan that your Majesty found in the Forrest of Orleance, and the same Child which you commanded me to see brought up, not at mine own Expence, Dread Soveraign, but your own. My Liege, the reason why I make tender of him unto you at this time, is, because he is growing to Mans Estate; and so may it please your Majesty, it is time to dispose of him as you please: The King having heard the words of the Esquire, called this Orphan (named Valentine) unto him, and took him by the hand, and moved divers questions unto him, all which he answered with much modesty, and great wisdom, and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cupboard of Plate should be given unto him. Moreover (said the King) I command that this Orphan Valentine be dearly preserved and kept, for that you shall perceive I respect him above common love; I will also, that this Infant shall be nourished and kept with my Daughter Eglantine, for she is both Fair, Wise, and well endowed with all the richest Gifts of Nature.

The King having given this Command, it was accordingly accomplished, insomuch that they were both under one Government, of one and the same Nurse, and had one and the same Attendants: Yea, every way they joyed one in the Company of the other, in such wise, that if the one was but a little absent from the other, there was a kind of Lamentation till they came together again: but especially the Kings Daughter: who so pondered on the prudent Carriages of the Orphan, that she became in love with him; insomuch that his absence brought her into a thousand fears, and drave her melancholly and disturbed thoughts, into a thousand doubts and jealousies.

Now Valentine was ever practising himself in Feats of Arms, as Horse, Armor, Justs, Turnaments, still exposing himself to all dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the inclination of this Youth, allotted unto him what his heart desired, and furnished him with Armor, Horse, Lands, Revenues, and made him Lord of rich Possessions, Being thus furnished, there arose within the Court

many

many secret mutterings, whereby many people fretted so sore in envy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful words against him, saying: That when he was at the best, he was but a found, stray, poor, base, without any known Parents or Friends, of no gentle, nor noble stock, and such like: which when Valentine heard, he could take no other revenge, but sit him down and weep: whose tears fair Eglantine perceiving, would, in a tender Woman-like affection, accompany him, even pouring forth her tears also for company.

At length when he saw tears little prevailed, he began to forsake it, and taking heart, bore himself like a Man, amongst the greatest in the Court, carrying himself in such humble and gentle frame, that he gained the love of all sorts and degrees, as well Nobles, as Inferiours.

Valentine thus growing up in love of the Court, all this while his Brother *Orson* runs in the Forrest, all rough, and covered with hair, like a Bear, and leading the life of a beast; where we leave him for a while, and return unto the affairs of King Pepin. It so chanced, that there came into Orleance divers Ambassadors from the Pope, demanding aid against the Sarazens, enemies of the holy Faith, who had lately taken the City of Rome by violence: King Pepin understanding hereof by divers Letters received, addressed himself & his powers, to make his resistance against this common Enemy; And among the rest of his worthy Followers, he ordained this Young Valentine a chief Commander. Fair Eglantine hearing that Valentine should make one, became wondrous heavy and sorrowful, for that she loved him more than any other Creature, and secretly by stealth, sent a Messenger unto him to come and speak with her. And when he came, she sighing, said unto him: Alas Valentine, my love, now I am quite bereft of all my joy, for I perceive you will betake your self to a dangerous War: Gentle Love, leave me not so Desolate, would to the Gods, that I had neither Father nor Friend in the world to contradict my will, then shouldest thou soon perceive how well my affection stands to thy person: For if wishes might avail, I swear (by the Gods) thou art the only man I would join my self unto in the bands of Marriage; and then shouldest thou be the K. of France, and I Queen. The young man hearing her idle imaginations,

ons; ſaid, Madam, leave theſe womaniſh dotages, you know I am no perſon fitting your eſtate, I am but a found ſtray, that your Father hath cauſed long time to be nouriſhed for charity-ſake. I am no way either fitting you, or the meaneſt Damoſel attending your perſon, make your choice elſe-where, & joyn Royal blood unto yours, & ſo with all duty I take my leave, & commend you to the Gods. Having thus ended his ſpeech, away he goes, leaving the poor Lady all heavy deſolate, and in the midſt of mourning.

By this time the King and all his retinue were in a readineſs to depart, and taking their way from Orleance towards Rome, they went through a mighty Forreſt, and being entred, the King called his Lords and Barrons together, and ſaid thus unto them: My Lords, it is not unknown to you, that in theſe Woods (as report goeth) there liveth a ſtrange Monſter, a Wild-man, much feared of Paſſengers, which ſpectacle of mans ſhape, I long to behold: before I venture out any further upon our intended Voyage to Rome. The Lords generally conſented, and the Chaſe was ſuddenly appointed. Being entred the Wood, they chaſed divers ſorts of wild-beaſts; and overcame them: but as for Orſon the wild-man, none durſt adventure the finding forth of him, ſave only his Brother Valentine (but he knew nothing) and he followed ſtill the chaſe; hoping at laſt both to find and to fight with him alſo. Every way they begirt the Wood, ſome one way, ſome another: The King himſelf venturing ſo far, that he came before a Cave, dark and obſcure, whereas this Wild-man uſed to hide himſelf. Orſon perceiving the King, ruſhed out upon him, caught him within his Nails (the which were long and crooked) and in rough and ravenous manner, caſt him on the ground. The King thus ſuddenly ſurprized by a ſavage man, never look't for life, but in a piteous manner cryed out for help, who was ſeconded by a valiant Knight at Arms, which eſpying the King to be almoſt ſtrangled, ſuddenly drew his ſword to have run the Wild-man through, Orſon perceiving the glittering ſword, left the King, and ran furiouſly upon the Knight, took him in his arms and overthrew him horſe and all. The Horſe ſore affrighted, got up again, and in a mad fit ran up and down the Forreſt; but as for the Rider, (though a Lt. at Arms) Orſon held him ſo faſt with his Twangs and Talons, that at laſt he pulled him in pieces. In the mean ſpace the King eſcaped, and meeting part of his Company, re-

lated to them the great danger he had escaped, & the fearful Death of the Knight These tydings much amazed the rest of the Company: yet being manfully resolved, they joyned themselves together, and marched towards the Cave to meet with Orson, and either to take him alive, or put him to death in the Cave. But being come thither, they found the Knight dead and torn to pieces, but Orson they could not find, for the Gods had reserved him to be conquered only by his Brother Valentine: of whose proceedings you shall hear more hereafter.

So the K. perceiving their labor lost, gave over the Chase, & set forward toward Rome. After this the K. ranked his forces into battel-ray, and the great Enlign of France was given to one called Myllon-Daugler, a very valiant Prince, and a wise Leader, so that he and his two Brethren, Gervays & Sampson, had the whole command of the Forces that then were marching towards Rome.

When they were come unto Rome, K. Pepin desired battel, and would fain understand the state that the City now stood in, under the conquest of the Sarazens, but it was told him he should not be too inquisitive of those affairs; for the Admiral of the Sarazens had surprized the City, and put multitudes to the sword, and had spoiled & defaced all the Churches, and made them Temples fit for their Heathenish Idols; and he constrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch Bishops, Bishops, Priors, Monks, Friers, and all the Ecclesiastical persons, for to serve at their Heathenish Altars, and to sacrifice to their Devils, after the custome of the Heathens. When King Pepin understood hereof, he was much enraged, to hear that the Christians were thus captivated by Heathens: wherefore he addressed himself nearer unto the City, & there having assembled all his forces he began to draw them into divers Squadrons, meaning thereby to give them a sudden assault, for his fury was so great against these Heathenish Sarazens, that he vowed revenge upon them; but taking better advise, he reserved himself and his Army for a season. What after befel, shall be delivered at large, when fit occasion serveth our purpose.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

How King *Pepin* beſieged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* juſted with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and ſlew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.

KIng Pepin being thus come to Rome, beſieged it, & after ſome few days ſpent, he called about him his Barrons, Knights, & mighty men of War, and began to ſpeak unto them in this manner: My Lords and followers, you well know that this Heathenish Admiral, Enemy to the Chriſtian Faith, and Church of Rome, hath put many Chriſtians to the Sword, and violently trodden under foot all ſuch as withſtood his power; Therefore it is our Duties to commiſerate their Eſtate that are thus overthrown, and to try the fortune of a Battel againſt thoſe Heathenish Pagans, and either drive them out of the City, or leave our dead Carkaſſes as a Prey, as many have done before. Wherefore, I King Pepin, reſting upon this reſolution, would fain find out a man to bear unto the Proud Admiral a Letter of defiance in my name. King Pepin having finiſhed his ſpæch, there was none amongſt them made him any anſwer to his requeſt. At length Valentine ſæing all ſtand mute, ſtepped forth before the Emperor, and began to ſpeak on this manner: Mighty Soveraign, ſo you be pleaſed to give me leave, I ſhall undertake the Meſſage, and ſhall no whit fear to ſpeak both unto the Pagan Admiral, and to the whole Hoſt of Pagans, were their multitude twice as many they be, and my return ſhall make proof that I have done my meſſage both with honour and advantage to your Majeſty.

The King hearing Valentine thus forward, and of ſuch undoubted and valiant reſolution, was right Joyful; and all thoſe of his Princely train greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous ſpirit. Hereupon the King called forth unto him a Secretary, willing him to draw a Letter of defiance, and deliver the ſame to Valentine. Valentine prepared himſelf thereunto, and no ſooner had he received the Letters, but he took leave of the King, and all his train, and being bravely mounted, he took his way towards Rome, and ſo to the Palace where the Admiral lay. So coming thither, he came before the Admiral, and ſaluted him after this manner: The Gods

preserve the Noble and Puissant King Pepin, my Lord and Soveraign: and Mahomet whom thou servest, save and defend thee redoubted Admiral. When Valentine had thus spoken, the Admiral rowzed him from his Chair, and with fierce and frowning brow, replied thus unto him: Messenger return, and get thee gone out of my sight, and say thus unto King Pepin, will him either to renounce his faith, and believe on Mahomet, or else let him look to receive no other sentence than death: and so destroy him, together with all his Lands and Kingdom: Get thee gone, and make here no longer abode, go, I say, reply not a word, for my heart is all enraged that so long I suffer thee.

Again, I tell thee, that for thy part, thou hast committed a haughty enterprise, thus to enter my Pallace, to deliver any such Message unto me. Wherefore I assure thee, by the height of my Majesty, If that I did assuredly know, that what thou hast done were through pride of heart and insolency, thereby to make a mock at our Majesty, thou should'st never return to K. Pepin, to carry an answer to thy proud Masters Letters. Valentine hearing these hot & furious words sounding from the Admiral, began to be afraid: Wherefore deliberating with himself what to reply, he mildly said, High and Mighty Emperor, do not imagine that by pride or presumption I am come before you; for when you shall understand the manner of my coming; you will be astonied thereat. Why then (qd. the Admiral) say on, tell us how thou art come, for I swear by Mahomet, I shall take great pleasure in hearing thee relate thine enterprize. Then said Valentine, Sir, so it is, that I was accused to K. Pepin for a Coward, & that since I came with him to this War, I would secretly have stolen away from the Camp, and returned back again into France: For which (great Admiral) the King had me in great disgrace, & vowed the next morning to smite off my head. I perceiving my self in this danger, sought rather to save my life, than to lose both life and honour, and therefore gave it forth throughout the Court that I would undertake to come to your Court to defie you on King Pepins behalf, and therewithal, that I would challenge you to break three Spears with you in single Combate, to try your valiancy, and to win unto my self that lost honour that before I told unto you: wherefore my request is, that your

Great-

Greatneſs would grant me my requeſt, otherwiſe I dare never return again, leſt the King put me to Death. The Admiral hearing this pittiful, yet cunning tale of Valentine, ſaid unto him: Son I do ſwear by Mahomet, thou ſhalt not be refuſed; but at this inſtant I offer thee the Juſts, & to the end that thoſe French-men that lye in ſiege before the City may have a ſight thereof, and ſee thy valour, I will ordain the place of Juſting to be without the City. Valentine humbly thanked him, and in token of his Acceptance and feigned Love, he fell down and kiſſed the feet of the Admiral. Valentine grew in to great favour in the Admirals court, but yet it often troubled his mind, that he could never underſtand who were his Parents: But while he beſtowed his wandring thoughts hereabout, the Admiral ſaid thus unto him: Fair Son, methinks you are very penſive and ſad. 'Tis true (quoth he) and not without cauſe, for I am much afraid that I ſhall be ſlain in theſe Juſts, wherefore my requeſt is, that I may have a Confeſſor to give me abſolution for my ſins; then the Admiral commanded that a Prieſt ſhould be brought unto him: The Prieſt being come, ſaid unto Valentine; Now confeſs you unto me, Valentine getting the Prieſt aſide, and being together, he ſaid thus unto him: Sir, you are a Chriſtian Prieſt, and above all other, you ought moſt to defend the Chriſtian Faith, wherefore hearken to that I ſhall tell you, for it is a thing requireth great ſecreſie. Thus it is, You know that this day I am to juſt with the Heathenith Admiral, the greateſt enemy of Chriſtian People: Now I am well aſſured that a great number of the Sarazens will iſſue forth of the City, to be eye-witneſſes of theſe Juſts, to be held without the Walls of the City. Therefore you ſhall give warning to all Chriſtians to keep within the Walls, arming themſelves in a readineſs, and cloſely keep it from the ears of the Pagans: ſo when the Pagans are come forth to behold the Juſts, the Chriſtians ſuddenly ſhall ſurprize the Guards that keeps the Gates, and if any Mutiny ariſe, let them keep out thoſe that are out. And ſend a Meſſenger to King Pepin of what is done, that he with his Army may come unto them that are without, while thoſe within are ſet on by the Armed Chriſtians, ſo begirting them on every ſide, that in the end we may make ſuch a ſlaughter of them, that the Chriſtians may receive both their City in Peace, and their former.

liberty

liberty. So having ended his speech the Priest departed: Then the Admiral commanded Valentine to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them charge he should be honourably attended at the board. Being set among many Lords, he behaved himself gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Nephew of his named Salatas, commanding him to see Valentine as well armed at all points as himself, and moreover charged his Nephew to deliver unto Valentine the best horse in his Stable. Salatas having received this Command from his Uncle the Admiral, took Valentine and led him into a fair Hall: being come thither, he caus'd to be laid before him divers Armours, willing him to make choice of the best: Valentine cast his eyes upon them all, and at last appointed the Armour wherewith he would be armed, and making himself ready as fast as he could, he approached down into the outer Court, whereas he was attended with his horse, ready to put his foot into the stirrop. Being come down out of the Hall, he presently mounted his horse, the Admiral issuing likewise ready armed out of his privy Pallace. Being thus armed, they took their way towards the Chief Gate of the City of Rome, for on that side K. Pepin had laid his Siege.

When they were both in the field, Valentine hung his Shield about his Neck, in which he wore a Hart waving in a field of silver, and on one side of the Hart a Tree, all which did signifie that he was found in a Forrest, and were the same arms King Pepin bestowed on him. The Champions being entred the Lists, great was the clamour of the French in joy of Valentine; the sound whereof the Pagans hearing, suddenly issued forth out of the City to behold these Triumphant Justs, The Fryer having plaid his part among the Christians within the City, presently after the Pagans were gone out to behold these Triumphs, addressed themselves to take possession of the Gates. which having gotten, there was no entrance again to be expected, King Pepin being made acquainted with their purpose, prepared all his men of war ready to relieve Valentine, if necessity required. Having now all things in readiness, the hour was at hand that the Justs should begin.

So each of them being prepared for the encounter, they valiantly Couched their Spears, & the first course proved so valiant, that their

Spears

Spears ſhivered all in Splinters; each Combatant perceiving valour to brandiſh on the top of his helm, made out a ſecond courſe where Valentine got the better; for with his Spear (charged againſt the breaſt of the Admiral) he gave him ſuch a ſtrong blow, that he forced his ſpear quite through his body: inſomuch that he fell from his horſe ſtark dead, making a pittiful Noiſe at his departure, wherefore the Pagans ran ſuddenly upon Valentine, and would have killed him. Valentine perceiving their intent, with a reſolute courage put Spurs to his horſe, and with his Sword drawn, violently ruſhed through the thickeſt of the Pagans, and ſlew many of them, as he paſſed through them. K. Pepin alſo with his Hoſt came up to the aid of *Valentine*, but he was ſo hard beſet by the Pagans, that he was ſmitten from off his horſe, which Valentine eſpying came up to the reſcue of the King, ſo that he horſed him again.

The King perceiving himſelf delivered out of danger, called unto Valentine, and ſaid: My Child, thou haſt ſaved my Life, which if the

the Gods grant to ſpare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the Battle grew ſo hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City; when they came to the Gates, the Chriſtians that were in the City iſſued on them, and placed the Enſigns and Standards of King Pepin on the Walls. The Pagans ſeeing King Pepins Colours diſplayed upon the Walls, betook themſelves to flight: in chaſe of them the Chriſtians followed on ſo faſt, that they ſhamefully ended their days. In this Battel were ſlain a thouſand Pagans onely by the means of Valentine, who bare himſelf ſo valiantly that day, that he was the Death of many of the Pagans. And thus by his Prowels the City was again reſtored to the Chriſtians, for which deed there was great Triumph in all Chriſtendom, but eſpecially at Rome: So that all the Inhabitants round about, gave everlaſting praiſe to Pepin K. of France, & by the general applauſe of the people he was created Emperor, & Crowned by the Pope. King Pepin did many goodly acts in his time, adminiſtring Juſtice to all. And this hapned in the time of Pope Clement the fourth.

CHAP. XII.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the Love the King did ſhew towards *Valentine*.

KIng Pepin having expelled the Pagans out of Rome, he took his way back again towards Orleance, & being there arrived, he was right joyfully welcomed by Bertha his Queen, with her little Son Charlemain, and her fair Daughter Eglantine, and their joy appeared ſo much the more, for that Valentine whom ſhe loved ſo dearly, was again returned home in ſafety: Being ſome few days reſted from his weary labours, the Lady ſends for Valentine, who accordingly came unto her, and when ſhe ſaw him, ſhe ſaluted him kindly, and with an amorous countenance began thus unto him: Valentine, you above all the reſt, are moſt welcome; & well ought it ſo to be, for Fame hath blown forth her Trumpet of your Triumphs, and report ſays, you were the onely Champion that drave the Pagans out of Rome. Valentine replyed, Madam, I can hinder no man to ſpeak what pleaſeth him; but as for my ſelf, I have done little deſerving praiſe, but it hath pleaſed the King your Father

Father to do me great honour, even ſo much, as all the days of my life I am not able to make the leaſt part of recompence: and as he ſpake theſe words Haufray and Henry, (two men compoſed of all envy) entred the Chamber of Eglantine: and ſeeing him, began thus to ſpeak: Valentine, what have you to do here in the chamber of our ſiſter? it is no place for ſuch ſtraglers as you are; this your boldneſs is not to be born: no man knows of whom you are, therefore we adviſe you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again leaſt you dearly buy theſe your preſumptions: Valentine hearing theſe words, anſwered: Wrong me not, for I entred not the Chamber of your ſiſter, to her diſhonour. What though I be poor, and not know of whence I am, yet I am not ſo baſe as offer violence unto one deſcended from the blood of Kings; And further, I promiſe and vow never to come near her Chamber again: and therewithal departed, leaving the Lady very penſive all alone.

Valentine haſted to the Palace, to wait upon the King at dinner, where was in preſence Haufray and Henry, and the Duke Myllain Daugler, who likewiſe waited upon the King during Dinner-time. Dinner being finiſhed, the King aroſe and called to Valentine, and in hearing of all his Nobles thus began to ſay: My Lords, here is Valentine, that hath well deſerved at our hands, and that ſaved my life when I was in danger; therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good ſervice towards me, I freely give unto him the Earldom of Clermont of Avergne, and when I can beſtow more upon him he ſhall not be forgotten. Valentine gave him many thanks, ſaying, That he had heaped upon him more honors then he could any way deſerve. Haufray and Henry hearing theſe words, grew greatly male-content, at laſt Henry began to talk with his Brother on this manner: This found fellow I perceive grows in great favour with the King, and there muſt be ſome courſe taken to croſs his deſigns, or elſe our overthrow will ſhortly follow upon it: for (quoth he) you know well that the King hath no Sons but we two, and one little one (named Charlemain) which if our Father dye, may by our furtherance quickly be ſet beſide the Kingdom. Again, it is greatly to be feared, that this Valentine will ſupport and uphold him againſt us. Therefore Brother, I think it good to frame ſome Plot againſt him, to bring him in diſpleaſure with the King,

and so far to prosecute your revenge against him, that if it be possible we will not only work his down-fall, but life and all. This being effected, we may at our pleasure Govern the Realm without contradiction. He having ended his speech Haufray replyed; Let it be as thou hast said, that we may entrap his life, this shall be our plot: We will both go to the King, and tell him, that this Elphart hath Defloured our Sister, and that we took him in Bed with her, which when the King heareth, will surely put him to Death. Being thus resolved, they daily fed their imaginations with the Death of Valentine: while he (nothing mistrusting) served the King daily in all duty, insomuch that the Kings love daily encreased toward him, and above all other most desired his company.

Here let us leave off a little, and come to Orson his Brother, who all this while lived in the Forrest, so much feared of all men, that none durst approach nigh the Wood. Daily complaints came unto the King from every side, and amongst the rest it chanced on a day, that a poor man came unto the King all wounded, saying thus unto him: Sir, I am come before you to make complaint against a wild-man in the Woods, for one day, as I and my wife passed through the Forrest, carrying bread and other victuals, the wild-man came upon us, took it away, & eat it every bit, & more then that, he violently took my wife from me, & constrained her to yield unto his lawless will. The K. hearing out the poor mans tale, was displeased to make himself merry with his ill fortune, & thereupon asked the poor man this question: Whether grieved him most, either the taking away of his victuals, or his Wife: By my faith, said the poor man, if the wrong offered to my Wife. Thou hast rightly said (qd. the King) therefore I command my Treasurer to see restitution made unto thee, for the loss of thy victuals: but as for thy Wife, thou must take the blame thereof thy self.

After this the King called all his Barrons to assemble, and take some order to take this Orson, all which they did, and hereupon a Proclamation was sent unto all parts of the Realm, that whosoever he was, that could take this Wild-man alive, or dead, should have a thousand marks for his reward. Hereupon assembled many Worthy Knights to take this task in hand, but the King being one day in his Palace, in the midst of his Nobles, talking and debating

ting who should be appointed to this business. Haufray (enemy unto Valentine) being there, said thus unto the King: Sir, here is Valentine, whom you have nourished, and advanced to high dignities and one that hath offered unlawful love to our sister Eglantine: He was fitted to set forward to try his valour, and let him be imployed to fetch in this wild-man, that is such a terror to the Inhabitants: and with his valour he can vanquish him, then let him have Eglantine in Marriage, which is his desired wish. The K. hearing these words of his Son; said, away, for thy speech savoureth of nothing but envy. What though he be poor, of low Birth, & found in a Forrest, yet I find him to me true and trusty, and of Gentile carriage, and to me seemeth to be born of a more Noble Parentage than thou art: leave off these thy malicious and bitter speeches against him; for the behaviour that dwelleth in him, shews that he is descended of more Noble Linage, then as yet to us appeareth. And I for my part (for the divers vertues that daily are seen in him) am willing that he go to my Daughter when ever he please, for I am well assured, that no dishonor can be offered out of a branch of such a generous spirit.

Haufray hearing the King make this Apology on the behalf of Valentine, was sore displeased in heart, but setting a good face upon the matter, dissembles his countenance for that time, but it seemed Valentine well observed him: & at last brake forth into these words: Haufray without any cause given on my part, ye have spoken ill of me, and your will it is, that I should undertake the fight and conquest of the wild-man, only to this end, that I might end my dayes, and so your revenge be accomplished upon me: Well, be it so, here before the King I take a Solemn Oath that I will take the enterprize upon me, and find out the wild-man, and having found him, I will fight him, and either bring him alive or dead, or else leave my dead carcass as a witness in the open field. But if I conquer and live, I will never more be seen in this Country, till I have found the Father that begot me, as also; bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlock, and how I came to be left an infant in the Wood.

The King understanding well what danger Valentine had plung'd himself into, grew exceeding angry against his two Sons,

cursing them, for that they were the cause of this dangerous enterprize: for he loved Valentine more then any, and at last called unto Valentine, and said: My Child, advise you well what you undertake, for to fight with the wild man is desperation it self, you cannot be ignorant how many valiant men, & worthy Champions, have by him been overcome: and others likewise of valiant account that have forsaken this Combat. Therefore I say, let not the evil words of a few malitious men make you desperate in losing your life. For my Child, it is far better to indure all the bitter words of envy (which is accounted vertue) then to hazard ones life against such a monster, and no man.

Valentine replyed, Pardon me (my Liege) for I will never revoke my intended purpose: They call me fond Brat, which grieveth my very soul: for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what place, but I rest determined and so take my leave, for to morrow morning will I set forward to my intended enterprize. Having taken his leave, marvel not, though the fair Lady Eglantine made great lamentation for what had happened: but the next morning by break of day, she called one of her Maidens, and said: Go unto Valentine & bid him come and speake with me before his departure, bid him fear no danger of life, for I would fain take my leave of him. The Damosel did as the Lady commanded, and when she came to Valentine, she found him mounted on horse-back, & she did her Message unto him. He understanding her Errand, said unto her, Damosel, I know the love to be great between my Lady Eglantine and me, yet I would not with her to desire that would turn to her dishonour. But envy is of so great power, that it never leaves them whom it once possesseth. For, certain it is, that Haufray & Henry (Brethren to your Lady) have at me great and malicious hearts, and will pursue me, even unto Death (if it be possible) wherefore fair Damosel, bear her this answer, which you heard me tell, and bid her think no evil thereof and further, that she hold me in excuse that I refuse to come; and so farewel.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

How *Valentine* conquered his brother *Orſon* in the forreſt of *Orleance*.

NOw is Valentine upon his journey to the Forreſt, accompanied only with his Page: whither being come, he put his Helmet on his Head, and ſent him back again. So he rode forth all that day, ſeeking the wild-man, but he could not find him: ſo the Night drawing on, he deſcended from his Horſe, and tyed him up to a Tree: having ſo done, he refreſhed his body with ſuch victuals as he had brought with him; and when he had eaten, and the day ſhut in, Valentine for fear betook himſelf to the top of a tree, & there abode all that night. In the morning as ſoon as day appeared, he looked round about, & at laſt eſpyed his brother Orſon runing through the Forreſt: At length when he came to the place where Valentine had tyed his horſe, the wild-man much wondring at the Beauty of him, began to claw him with his long Nails, thinking thereby to rouze up the Courage of the Horſe, for he had never ſeen the like. The Horſe feeling the wild-mans nails ſcratching his ſide, began to fling and kick exceedingly. Valentine ſitting on the top of a tree, noted the terrible ſhape of the wild-man, and began to be afraid; but calling on the Gods, he requeſted their aid againſt this monſter. Orſon all this while was ſtill buſied in beholding the Horſe, and ſtill offered him ſuch injury with his Nails, that the Horſe did nothing but kick and bite him. When Orſon perceived the Horſe to be too hard for him, he caught faſt hold on him, and thought to have overthrown him, as though he would have fought with him. Valentine perceiving his Horſe in danger to be ſlain, he cryed out aloud, and ſaid: wild-man, leave my Horſe, and ſtay but till I come down, and with me thou ſhalt have fighting enough. The wild-man hearing a ſtrange voice, looked up into the tree, & eſpying there a man, made unto him divers ſigns with his hands & head to come down, & he would pull him in pieces. Valentine making all the haſte he could, drew his Sword and leapt upon the ground cloſe by the wild-man; when Orſon ſaw the Sword, and that he offered to ſmite him therewith, he leaped back, and kept himſelf from the ſtroak, but ſuddenly returned again upon

upon Valentine, and threw him unto the ground. Herewitha Valentine was very much discomfited, for he looked for no other than present Death in the place, for he felt the strength of the wild-man so great, that he had no hope of escaping.

Being thus both Grovelling on the ground, Valentine assaid divers times to have gotten Orson under him, but could not, when he saw that by strength there was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a sharp pointed knife, and smote Orson deep into one of his sides: that the blood issued out abundantly. Orson feeling himself wounded, all inraged, he gave such a screech, that the Woods ecchoed again at the sound thereof, but yet recovering himself, he so fiercely assaulted Valentine with his sharp nails, that he got him at such an advantage, that he threw him once more upon the Earth, where lying, they fought so long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At last, Orson took the shield from about the Neck of Valentine, and having got it, he beheld it right strangely, in regard of the divers colours thereon emblazed: when he had looked his fill he cast it against the Ground, and suddenly returned again to Valentine, with the violence of his Nails and teeth, he brake in pieces both the Ribs of his Armor, and his Habergeon also, smiting and beating him so sharply with his nails, that he made the blood follow in all places whereon he laid hold. Valentine feeling himself sore wounded, after some Orisons used to the Gods, he made again upon Orson with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him, but Orson recoyling back, step'd unto a tree hard by, the which tree he pulled up by the roots, and made thereof a Club, being thus prepared, he made against Valentine, and striking at him, gave him such a blow, that he made him fall upon one knee; Valentine recovering again, laid about him fiercely, so there began again another dangerous fight between the two Brethren, not knowing they were so, nor the cause of this their fortunes. Orson was so cruel, and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed Valentine, had not it been for his Sword, for he was sore afraid thereof by reason he had received a wound before by a knife; Long time they fought together, insomuch as they both grew faint. In which tyredness both standing gaping on each other Valentine looked wishly upon Orson, and said thus: Wild-man; wherefore wilt thou not yield thy self unto me? Here thou livest like a beast,

beaſt, having no knowledge of humane ſociety, come thy way with me, and I ſhall make thee know thy ſelf & others, I will give unto thee food of all ſorts, and alſo cloath thee in apparel fitting humane ſhape.

Orſon underſtanding by ſigns that he would his good, fell down upon his knees, and ſtretched forth his hands towards his Brother, making ſigns unto him to forgive him, and he would commit himſelf under his command ever after, and with further ſigns promiſed, that during his life, he would aſſiſt him both in body & goods. This happening thus, it was great joy to Valentine in that he had conquered the Wild-man, which ſo many Knights durſt not meddle withal: for by this onely he had won himſelf more honor than any Knight that lived in France in thoſe days. All this hard adventure now knitting up in this manner, he took Orſon by the hand, and ſhewed him by ſigns, that he ſhould go on before him till they were out of the Wood, for he would not truſt him behind, & being out of the wood, Valentine took off one of his Girts, and bound both of his hands faſt unto his body, that he ſhould not attempt again to do him any hurt; and in this manner being bound, he mounted on horſe-back, and led the Wild-man with him like a beaſt, who never reſiſted, which was a thing moſt of all to be wondred at.

CHAP. XIV.

How *Valentine* having conquered *Orſon* the wild-man, departed from the Forreſt towards *Orleance*, wherein King *Pepin* was reſident.

VAlentine having conquered the Wild-man (as ye have heard) took his way towards Orleance, but you muſt imagine he could not reach thither in one day, wherefore the day being ſpent, he determined to lodge at the next Town or Village: being come thither, he thought there to take reſt that night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the wild man to come along with Valentine, every man ran into his Houſe, ſhutting up their doors, & for very fear durſt not offer once to look out on him: Valentine perceiving them full of fear, cryed out unto them, ſaying: Open your doors every man, & fear not, for we come only for lodging; yet for all this, they would not give him ſuccour: At laſt ſeeing neither intreaty nor threatnings would prevail,

vail, he swore most bitterly that if they would not receive him into their Houses, to rest there that night, he would let loose the wildman amongst them; still he proceeded to intreat for Lodging, but none would give it him. At last, as he had threatned, so he did, & letting loose the wild-man, he made him signs how he should run against such a Gate, which was an Inn, the which he did, and wringing a Post from out of the earth, he therewithal flung them open with such violence, that they fell off the hooks upon the ground. Valentine seeing the Gate opened in this manner, entred the house, and the wild-man with him: But when they within saw the Gate broken down, they all forsook the house, and ran out at the back door, leaving all to Valentine and his Beastly Guest, Valentine perceiving them all fled, went to the Stable, and set up his horse, and dressed him, and Orson in the mean time went into the Kitchen, where there was Capons and divers other provisions of flesh upon a Spit Roasting at the Fire. Valentine made signs to Orson, that he should turn the Spit, but so soon as Orson understood his meaning, he set his horny tallons upon the meat, & tore it from the Spit, devouring it as greedily as a ravenous Wolf: when he had torn the Meat in pieces, he espyed a Caldron of water standing by, into which he put his head like a Horse, & drank water unmeasurably. Valentine perceiving him to be a thirst, made signs unto him, that he should forsake the water, and he would give him Wine, and therewithal took a Pot, & led him into the Seller: when Valentine had drawn the pot full of Wine: he gave it unto Orson, who set it unto his mouth, & tasting the Liquor, found it to be very good, drinking so freely thereof, that he drank out all the wine, and afterward threw the Pot against the ground, making a sign unto Valentine to draw him more: Valentine fulfilled his signs, and filled him the Pot again, but Orson espying before his sight a little Bowl-dish, he put the Wine into it, and carried it into the Stable to Valentines Horse, but Valentine perceiving that, made signs unto him, that his horse drank nothing but water, yet Orson shewed again by signs, that wine was a great deal better than Water. Many other accidents happened while they were in the House, which here we will pass over, for the night was so far spent that rest were fitter for them than Meat. Valentine hasted him to supper, making Orson to bear him Company (after his

(kind

kind) but Orſon drank ſo freely of the wine that Valentine gave him, that he became drunk, and in the end got him to the fire, and fell faſt aſleep. Valentine ſeeing what had happened, ſaid: Now do I perceive, that there is neither any ſtrength, nor reſiſtance in this wild-man, for if I would I could ſuddenly here end his days: But in regard he would make a further tryal of him, he punched againſt him with his foot ſo hard that it awaked him: being awaked, he made ſigns unto him, that there was People about the houſe: with that Orſon ſuddenly roſe as in a trance, & catching up a great log, within the chimney, he ran againſt the Gate of the Houſe, that he made all ſhake again: at which ſudden action, Valentine fell into a great Laughter, which Orſon perceiving, let all alone, and betook himſelf to his reſt again. Valentine made unto him another ſign, that he ſhould fear nothing, for he would be his Watch-man, but Orſon would not ſleep again, but with the log in his arms. And Valentine did as he before had promiſed unto Orſon, and watched all that night, fearing the Inhabitants, leſt that they ſhould grow into an uproar, for they were ſo greatly poſſeſſed with fear, that they forſook their houſes, & ran every one to the Church, and all that night ſo tumbled the Bells backward, that ere the morning came, all the Village was filled with Men of War.

Now the morning being come, Valentine betook him to his horſe, leading Orſon bound (as he did the day before) towards Orleance, and the next day came to the City.

The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the wild-man, ran every man into his houſe, ſhutting their door, and getting up into their higher Rooms, gazing out of their Windows. Being entred the City, tydings came to K. Pepin, that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man: the King hearing hereof, was greatly aſtonied, and at laſt ſaid: Valentine, my Child, in a happy hour waſt thou born, bleſſed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the wood, for now I ſee thou art fortunate, & by thee are we delivered of our fears. Valentine rode through the City of Orleance, till he came at the Pallace Gate of the King, and when the Porter ſaw Orſon; they ſhut the Gates upon them, till Valentine with a loud voice ſaid unto them, Fear not, but go tell the K. that I will ſhield him, and all his Court from the fury of this Wild-man, for I

have him ſo tame, that he will not hurt any one. The Porters went and told the King what Valentine ſaid, who commanded they ſhould enter the Palace. Then Valentine took Orſon by the hand, & led him into the Court. When Bertha and the fair Eglantine heard that the Wild-man was come, they got them to their Chambers for fear, Valentine went up into the great Hall, where King Pepin ſat, accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him home: Amongſt the reſt ſtood Hauſrey and Henry, who alſo made great ſhew of love, but in heart wiſhed the Wild-man had been his death. K. Pepin, and the reſt of the Lords gazed on the Wild-man, inſomuch as the King ſaid, he is made of a proper mold, fair of ſtature, and though now he ſeem rough, yet if he were cloathed he would become the ſhape of a right worthy Knight. Then Valentine ſaid my Liege, it were requiſite he were baptized. It pleaſeth me well (ſaid the K.) let it be done. So the prieſt was appointed to baptize him: theſe were

his

his God-Fathers, King Pepin and D. Millain: Valentine, and the Dutcheſs of Bourbon; So they called his name Orſon: the baptiſm being ſolemnized, the King ſat him down to dinner, and Valentine waited on his Cup: then Orſon was commanded into the Hall to ſee his behaviour; and being come; the K. beheld him earneſtly. Orſon ſeeing the Meat, took as much as he could graſp in his hand, & devoured it. Having eaten that, he eſpyed one of the Attendants that brought a Peacock to the Table, who coming near unto him, ſnatched away the Peacock, and ſat him down and devoured it moſt greedily. Valentine ſeeing his behaviour, made ſigns unto him that he did not well, whereat Orſon ſeemed aſhamed, but the King had let him alone, for he much delighted in his rudeneſs. Orſon having devoured much meat, got a pot of Wine and drank it off, throwing the pot to the ground. Night being come, Valentine was appointed to a fair Chamber, & a bed for Orſon in the ſame, but as ſoon as ever he entred the Chamber, he laid him on the ground, and ſo fell aſleep.

CHAP. XV.

How *Haufrey* and *Henry* took Counſel together to Murther *Valentine* in the Chamber of *Eglantine*.

RIght glad and joyful was the fair Lady Eglantine that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man, inſomuch that ſhe ſent him word to bring the Wild-man into her preſence. Then Valentine took Orſon by the hand, and led him to the Chamber of Eglantine, where were aſſembled divers Ladies of honour to behold him: Orſon being in the Chamber, in a laughing humour lept upon the bed, there making divers ſigns unto the Ladies, which pleaſed them, but his meaning they could not underſtand, at which they were right ſorry. At laſt Valentine opened to them his meaning, which was, that he would gladly kiſs and play with ſome of them, whereat they looked one upon another and began to laugh. While this aſſembly of the Ladies chanced in the Chamber of Eglantine, Haufray came to Henry and ſaid thus unto him: Brother, you ſee how the Honour and Credit of this Foundling encreaſeth, which much eclipſeth our Honour, and we muſt ſeek ſome remedy for it. It is true (ſaid Henry) wherefore let us lay ſome Plot to cut him off.

Then said Henry, hearken what I shall say, Valentine is now with our Sister, and we may have fit occasion to kill him in her Chamber: when we have done, we will inform the King that we found him in her bed. According to their determination, they put it into action, & rushed into the Chamber of Eglantine. As soon as Haufrey was entred, he roughly thus began with Valentine. Disloyal man, now shalt thou know the price of thy inconstancy, purchasing daily great dishonour unto the King our Father, by abusing our sister Eglantine, and leading her affections to work your pleasure on her, insomuch as by thee she is made unfortunate. But sith the King hath been told hereof, and he regardeth not our complaint, it is therefore high time to take Vengeance of thee in our own persons. And Haufray lift up his fist, and calling him Traitor, smote Valentine on the face, so that the blood ran out of his Mouth. Henry on the other side came to him, & with a Glave thought to have smitten Valentine to the earth. Orson perceiving they were in earnest, leapt out, and gave Haufray such a stroak with his rough hand that he felled him, & after ran to Henry, and girded him so between his arms, that if the Ladies had not been in presence to have appeased his Wrath, he had destroyed them both at once.

This caused an Outcry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barrons of the Court, to know the cause of this sudden clamour, but when they understood that Orson had dealt so violently with the K. Sons, they would have killed him with their Swords. Valentine perceiving their fury to arise, drew his sword, and swore, that if any of them offered violence to Orson, he would run them thorow, this said, he made a sign to Orson to be still, and so he rested himself for that time; Haufray and Henry went to their Father, making unto him great complaint against Valentine and the Wild-man, saying: Father in an ill hour was this Valentine born, for he hath brought hither, the Wild-man, only to work our overthrow; & if you put him not to death, he will shortly do the like against your Royal person: The King hearing this complaint, was exceeding sorry, and gave them this answer; that as for Orson, he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without leave given him; and as for Valentine, the King sent for him to demand the cause of this disorder. Valentine being come before

the

the King, began to ſay on this manner: Dread Soveraign, I was in the Chamber of your Daughter Eglantine; accompanied with divers other Ladies that deſired to ſee Orſon; I know not how, nor why your two ſons Haufray and Henry violently entred the Chamber, charging me that I had abuſed the body of your fair daughter: Moreover, in the heat of their violence uſed againſt me, Haufray ſmote me on the face, that the blood iſſued; & Henry lifting up his ſword, thought to have taken away my life: All which when *Orſon* ſaw he ſuddenly made towards them, and ſmote them both to the earth, & therewithal began this uproar. The King hearing this tale, ſaid: and is this true that you have ſaid? Upon my life (ſaid Valentine) all that I have ſpoken is true. Then ſaid the K. Orſon hath done nothing but right, & that which in duty he ought to do. And as for you Haufray and Henry, I ſee right well that you art even ſwollen full of malice againſt Valentine; wherefore I charge you from henceforth, that you attempt no ill againſt him, for here I vow, that I would not loſe him for the beſt Barron in my Land, for I have made many tryals of his love & faithfulneſs toward me: & with this anſwer Haufray & Henry departed, although ſorrowful in heart, that they could not work their wills upon him.

They being gone, Valentine ſtayed ſtill in the K. Hall amongſt the other Nobles that were there aſſembled, and Orſon went here and there round about the Palace, at laſt he came unto the kitchin where the Cooks were making ready ſupper, & being there, he eſpyed two Capons ready for the fire, Orſon made towards the Capons. and ſet upon them, eating them up raw like a hungry Dog: The Cook ſeeing him eat up his Capons, took a Peſtle lying by him, & gave Orſon ſuch a blow, that he made him bow therewith; Orſon feeling the blow, ſtoped down, & took the Cook up betweən the Legs, throwing him down upon the ground, and being down, he ſo belaboured the poor Cook, that he had well nigh beat him to Death. Tydings was brought unto the King, that Orſon had ſlain the Cook, and none durſt come near him.

The King hearing hereof willed him to be brought before him, and made ſigns unto him that he ſhould be Hanged; But Orſon fetched the Peſtel, and made ſigns how the Cook had Beaten him therewith, wherefore the King commanded that none ſhould offer him

him any injury. So after that, Valentine taught him manners, how he should behave himself; and so they both lived quietly in the Court of King Pepin.

CHAP. XVI.

How Duke *Savary* sent unto K. *Pepin* for aid against the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his Will.

IT chanced that not long after the coming home of Valentine and Orson into the Court of K. Pepin, that Duke Savary sent certain Messengers unto K. Pepin, which said to him on this manner. Great King, our good Duke hath sent us unto you, to request your Aid against a false and accursed Pagan (called the Green Knight) who hath besieged his Confines, and intendeth to have his Daughter by force of Arms against his Will, notwithstanding all the resistance that he and his three Sons can make against him. The King having heard this Message, made this answer: We agree to give him all the aid we can. He had no sooner given answer unto the Messengers but there was come unto the Court another Messenger from Lyons, who after his duty done unto the King, said thus unto him, Renowned King, assemble your men of War in readiness, and conduct them towards Lyons, for the Almains are coming against you in great numbers, their whole force consisting of above an hundred thousand fighting men. The King hearing this sudden news, was much troubled in mind; and presently called before him the Arch-Bishop of Rhemes, the Duke Myllon Daugler, Garvas, & Sampson, these with others of his nobles being assembled, he declared what the Messenger had said, and withal, craved their counsel what was best to be done, whether to go to Aquitain to succour Duke Savary: or to Lyons, to resist the Almains? whereunto Myllon Daugler made this answer: The Duke, I confess, deserveth to be succoured, but yet in two extreams, let us chuse the less; Therefore I judge it most meet, first to defend our own Land, that is now in present danger, and for the Duke, he must be content to take our present affairs for answer: So generally it was concluded to go for Lyons.

With

With theſe wo:ds, the Meſſenger that came from the Duke Savary departed, and carried theſe tydings with him to Aquitain, which made him very ſo:rowful to hear it; becauſe th: Græn Kt. had very ſtrongly aſſailed him. Now, here gentle Reader, I let you underſtand, ſo: the better o:dering your p:oceedings, that this Græn Knight here ſpoken of, was b:other to Ferragus, the Gyant that kept the Lady Belliſant in his Caſtle, who was the diſtreſſed Mother of theſe two Infants bo:n in the wood, called Valentine & Orſon, as is befo:e declared. Duke Savary perceiving no hope of aid from K. Pepin, made open P:oclamation th:oughout all his dominions, that all, of what condition ſoever, ſhould be ready arm'd againſt the mo:row after, ſo: he would then go out upon the Græn Kt. and Fight with him in the field, all which was acco:dingly perfo:med. The day appointed being come, both armies met, as well Ho:ſe as Foot, the Pagans p:eſented themſelves in multitudes, and the Græn Kt. behaved himſelf ſo valiantly, that at the firſt encounter, with his battel-Ax at two blows he ſlew two Valiant Kts. Duke Savary perceiving him to be ſo warlike a General, came up to encounter him, & meeting they aſſailed each other; but the Duke was ill-adviſed to adventure his body againſt the Green Knight, becauſe it was ever perempto:ily repo:ted of him, that he ſhould never be overcome of any except he were a Kings Son, & ſuch a one as had never ſucked the b:eaſts of any woman. But the Græn Kt. was herein deceived, ſo: he thought it impoſſible any ſuch man ſhould be upon the face of the earth: but it fell out contrary to his expectation, as you ſhall underſtand. Let us now return to the two valiant leaders, who fought long and fiercely, but the Duke ventured ſo far into the enemies hands, that when he had thought to have retired, he could not; ſo: he was round begirt with ſuch multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken p:iſoner, and b:onght back unto the Græn Knight, whoſe ranſome could not be granted ſo: any Gold o: Treaſure. His men at Arms perceiving the Duke ſurp:ized, returned unto Aquitain, ſo:e Lamenting the loſs of their good Duke, And his 3 Sons, Garin the elder Anſelmne and Garin the younger, made great mone to ſee the hard hap of their Father, led captive among the Pagans.

The ſons having ſhewed their ſo:rows, in comes Fezon his daughter with

with this lamenting out-cry: Alas, in an ill hour was I born, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered death in my quarrel; and yet there is one thing more troubleth my distempered soul than all the rest, which is this, that my Father should be held Captive in the hands of his enemies, the only way to bring his aged years with sorrow to the Grave. Alas (dear Father) your Love to me is the only cause of all these disasterous chances. Thus fell Fezon into a dangerous fit of discontent, insomuch, as with this extremity of sorrow, she had well nigh finished her days, had not the rest of the Ladies attending, laboured to comfort her in this great sorrow, wherewith she was almost overcome.

Whilst the Lady was thus oppressed with sorrow, the Green Knight triumphed over the worthy Duke, causing him to be brought before him into his Pavilion, and having him there, began to revile him in this disdainful manner: Duke, now thou perceivest that thou art my Vassal, and that I have power over thy life; this that I speak thou canst not deny: therefore let me tell thee what thou shalt expect from my sacred lips: either give me thy Daughter Fezon to wife, and so redeem thy life, or else I will have her against thy will, leading her amongst rough Mountains, and there Royally Crown her Queen of those craggy Mansions.

The Duke hearing these proud menaces, began thus to reply: proud and insolent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give consent that thou have my Daughter, except thou also subscribe to be Baptized. The Green Knight hearing him say so, replyed: Urge me no further, for I am wholly bound to Mahomet; Wherefore once again I tell thee, except thou yield to my demand, I will first make thee finish thy days miserably, and afterwards consume all Aquitain to ashes, and after that, put to the sword all that come in my way, Men, women, and Children. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus resolute, began again on this manner: Pagan, the Gods protect me from thy cruelty, for I had rather rely on their power than thine. The Green Knight hearing him say so, began wilfully to set his eye upon him, and marking his unwonted lamentations, began a fresh with him on this manner: Grave Duke, leave off these thy sad laments, and hearken unto my relation and resolution also, and that it is: I am not ashamed to let you understand, that thy Daughters beauty

hath

hath enthralled me, and therefore I will recal my threatned ſentence of death againſt thee; out of which captivate affections towards thy Daughter I am forced to yield to this condition, that thou ſhalt find out a Knight within the ſpace of ſix months, to encounter me; and if ſo it happen, that by ſtrength of arms he conquer me, I vow by all the Heavens, to ſend thee back again into thy own Country, without waſting any of the ſame: But if it happen that I prove Conqueror over that Kt. then ſhalt thou willingly reſign thy fair Daughter into my hand, to be my lawful wife. Theſe Articles being pronounced, the Duke willingly agreed thereunto, ſo the Truce was accordingly proclaimed.

Theſe Agreements thus concluded, the Green Kt. gave leave that Duke Savary ſhould depart, upon Conditions, that he ſhould ſwear to keep Covenants, not only for the preſent, but during his life. The Duke being thus delivered, made his repair to Aquitain, whither being come, he cauſed open Proclamation to be made of thoſe conditions, whereunto he had before ſubſcribed concerning his ſaid Daughter: and withal, the Truce taken for the ſpace of ſix months. His Counſellors hearing what was paſt, adviſed him to diſpatch Meſſengers into all Lands, with theſe advertiſements following: If there were any Kt. whatſoever, that durſt encounter the Green Kt. for the love of the beauteous Lady Fezon, he ſhould lay down his Gage and ſo be anſwered. Theſe Letters were ſent into 12 Chriſtian Lands: what followed, you may better learn by the ſucceeding Chapter.

CHAP. XVII.

How divers Knights arrived at *Aquitain*, at a ſolemn Juſt there holden to bear away the Love of the beauteous Lady *Fezon*.

DURING this time of the Truce, between Duke Savary and the Green Kt. Pepin K. of France, had taken his Journey againſt his Enemies at Lyons, accompanied with a mighty Hoſt of men, being come before the City with all his Forces, he ſet upon a K. called Lampatris, who had alſo brought into the Field 10000 fighting men. This Lampatris was King of Syres, Holland, and Frizeland, with the Country of Monemarch, in the which ſtood a very

strong defenced City, whereunto they withdrew themselves. King Pepin getting knowledge hereof, strongly begirt this City with a siege, insomuch that at last they were constrained to yield, or suffer famishment; but resolving upon the safety of their lives, they yielded their City, which City the King bestowed upon Guy, Marshal of France. The wars being ended, Pepin returned again into France: with all his warlike Souldiers. Being arrived at Paris, it was told him that Duke Savary had taken truce with the Green Knight, and the manner how; whereat the King laughing heartily, said in the presence of his Barrons: Who is he amongst you that would win fair Fezon for his love, must take upon him a Combat against the Green Knight, whom if he conquer and overcome, the Duke will not only give him his Daughter, but one half of his Possessions: & that this is true, behold Letters written with his own hand. Every one of these worthy Knights right diligently viewed these letters, yet none of them durst undertake the enterprize, save only Valentine, who perceiving them all refuse it, said thus unto the King: Right dear Soveraign, if it please you to give me leave, I will adventure my strength upon that Green Knight, & will gladly undertake the task committed. Again, I have a great desire to leave France, for I long to take in hand some tedious journey, to find out the mother that bore me, and from whence I am descended. Valentine (said the King) take thou no care of whence thou art, for it resteth in my power to make the greater than any man within my Court, & for that I find thee willing to go to Aquitain, I freely give thee leave, but on condition, that after thou hast tryed thy Manhood with the Green knight thou return again, if thou escape with life: Valentine yielded to the King in his demand, and so taking leave, he shortly after prepared to his journey.

When Eglantine heard that Valentine would go to Aquitain, she was very sorrowful, and at last in the midst of tears, sent for Valentine to come unto her, Valentine promised the messenger to be with her anon: which accordingly he performed, and being come, she burst forth in tears, saying: Ah Valentine, now I do well perceive that all my joys are at an end, and that you are resolved to leave this Country of France. Ah! would to God it might be my good hap to go with you, for there is not a man living, whom I hold so dear as you, & (were

not

not I curbed by my high birth) I would make thee my Husband. And that thou mayeſt the better perceive my true intent, take thou here the keys of all my treaſure, & take what pleaſeth thee, for there is great ſtore; and the Gods give thee ſuccour, in all thy knightly enterprizes.

Lady (quoth he) Silver and Gold I need none, but that which moſt of all diſtempereth my unquiet breaſt, is, That I cannot learn of my deſcent. Moreover, one thing more troubleth me as much as the other, which, That I bear upon one of my ſhoulders a Croſs, & it is of the colour of moſt pure Gold, of which ſign I know not what to gather, but reſolve thus, never to reſt in any place, until ſuch time as I have found out the truth of my Nativity: and ſo lovely Lady, I take my leave, earneſtly requeſting you to ſtop the current of theſe Brinish tears, and withal, I vow, That if I find my Birth anſwerable to the Majeſty from whence you are deſcended, to take you as my only choice to wife, forſaking all other. On the other ſide, having found out my birth; and perceiving it not anſwerable to yours, I would not be your Husband for all the wealth in the world: For malicious tongues in time to come will ſay, where are the brethren, ſiſters, or Cozens of this runagade, that hath preſumed to match himſelf unto the daughter of our mighty King Pepin: having ſpoken all theſe words, he departed, leaving Eglantine full of grief. But when ſhe had ſome little time ſat ſtill, ſhe could not be ſatisfied, but ordered to follow him whitherſoever he went; and in concluſion, brought him ſome part of his way, being accompanied with divers of the Nobility. Valentine being departed, Haufrey & Henry were right glad thereof, privily conſpiring how to bring it to paſs, that Valentine & his Brother Orſon (who went along with him) might by treacherous villany come unto an untimely death.

CHAP. XVIII.

How *Haufrey* and *Henry*, accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in ambuſh to take away the Life of *Valentine*.

Valentine and Orſon having taken their leave of K. Pepin, addreſſed themſelves for Aquitain. Being on their way Haufrey and Henry conſulted together (joyning to their Aid a Third

who was Cozen to them both) how they might lye in Ambush to set upon Valentine & Orson, to work their destruction: which number was about thirty strong able men. This Plot being thus come to perfection, charge was given to these warlike men, that if they could not overcome Valentine and his Brother Orson to death, yet they should lay hold on Valentine, and keep him safe. The place appointed where this should be done, was a very large & great Forrest, through which Valentine must needs pass. Not long after the Ambush was pitched, it so chanced that Valentine came riding along the Forrest with Orson running by his side, swifter than a Horse, who coming near the place where these armed men lay, forth steps their Captain (called Grygor) accompanied with all his troop, with their Weapons drawn, thinking to have surprized Valentine on the sudden, and to have put him to death: Now this fierce traytor lent him such a mor-

tal blow, that his sword piereed quite through his Armour, & entred into the flesh, in so much as the blood followed the blow; and withal uttered

uttered forth theſe unwelcome words; Valentine, either yield thy ſelf captive, or receive thy Death. Valentine, as a man all amazed, was ſomewhat moved at the ſight of his own blood, & conſidering how he was encompaſſ'd with a multitude of his enemies recommending his innocency unto the Gods, at laſt ſpoke on this manner: My Lord (ſpeaking to Haufray & Henry) I ſee well that you have determined my days by Treaſon and without cauſe on my part given, but yet I aſſure you, that before I yield my ſelf into your hands, or before this days Sun be ſet, I ſhall ſend ſome of you here preſent into ſuch a Country, that you ſhall ſcarcely ever return again to bring tydings of your Valour. And therewithal drew forth his Sword, and gave the firſt that encountred him ſuch a blow upon the head, that he clave it even to the Teeth, and there he lay dead: After that he betook him towards the reſt, with ſuch violence, that at every ſtroak one fell before him.

Orſon perceiving his brother thus to lay about him, began to rouze himſelf, & with his rough hands & piercing tallons, he rent & tore all that came in his way, & ſo bit them with his teeth that they fell grovling unto the ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like dirt, pinching them with his feet. Valentine ſeeing his Brother Orſon thus beſtir himſelf, held up his bloody Sword, defending himſelf, and offending his enemies ſo valiantly, that they all forſook them, and durſt not ſtay within their ſight; Grygar their Captain, perceiving all his men thus pitifully killed and overcome, cryed out with a loud voice on this manner. Valentine, yet I wiſh thee yield, or elſe look for nothing but death. Valentine hearing theſe inſulting words, made towards Grygar, and in a fierce and furious manner aſſailed him; but being too forward, he plunged himſelf into the throng, that he was encloſed round about, keeping off Orſon with their long ſpears. Being thus begirt with enemies, he ſtill behaving himſelf ſo valiantly that none durſt lay hands upon him, till at laſt they gathered in ſo cloſe upon him, that he was overcome with multitudes, and being not able any longer to wield his Sword, they took him, bound him, and carry'd him away with ſtrong hands. Orſon perceiving his Brother thus poſted away, ran after, making a hideous noiſe, but he could not overtake them, for they rid away ſwifter than he could run, and having at laſt loſt the ſight of them, knew

knew not which way he were best to take after. Grygar the Captain commanded them to follow after Orson, & to bring him back, either alive or dead; but in vain they followed, for he out-run them, & so escaped. Those that had the charge of Valentine, brought him to a castle standing in the midst of a Forrest, kept by a notable thief, who was Cousin German to Grygar; Valentine being entred the Castle Gate, they entreated him evilly, and conveyed him to a deep Dungeon, which grieved him to the heart, insomuch that in his grief, he burst out into these speeches: Alas, now is that come upon me which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the hands of my deadliest enemies, and those that have ever sought my life and utter destruction. Farewel Noble K. Pepin, for I fear I shall never see thee more, and that which most of all vexeth me, is, that they never shall understand the truth of my Death, for the very stench of this loathsome Dungeon doth even stop my breath; farewel Orson too, for thou hast already suffered death for my sake, and more could no Man do, even as much as if thou hadst been my Natural Brother: Farewel my dear mother also, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might see and know her, but my hopes are all frustrated, for I now must dye without the knowledge of what Parentage I am descended. Thus Valentine lamented in the dark Pit, whilst his Enemies determine what shall be done to him: Some were of opinion to put him to death, others that he should be committed to a perpetual Imprisonment: But Grygar being Lord over the rest, would not yield he should be put to death, but rather to keep him in Prison till Haufray & Henry have receiv'd knowledge of all their Proceedings. Having thus set down their resolution, they determined to take their Journey towards Paris, where the King then lay, to meet with Haufray and Henry, who entertained them Royally, being right glad that Valentine was fallen into their hands by Treason. Now understand, that Orson all that night was fain to rest within the Wood; lying down at the Root of a Tree: the morning being come, he took on his way towards Paris, also, never resting till he came into the Presence of King Pepin: being come thither, by signs and tokens he shewed the manner of the taking of Valentine, but yet for all the haste he made, Grygar arrived at the Court before him. Haufray and Henry were much grieved that Orson had escaped, but all their comfort was, he could

could not ſpeak, thinking thereby for to eſcape from miſtruſt & ſuſpition, but their hopes were all laid in the Duſt, as hereafter will appear.

The next day the 2 brethren had appointed that Grygar ſhould return in all haſte to the Caſtle to put Valentine to death, thereby thinking all their treaſons might paſs undiſcovered: But ſee how it come about, that all their counſels, were quite overthrown: for Orſon (as before is ſaid) came unto the Kings Palace that morning, and growing towards Dinner-time, the Tables being all prepared, the King, accompanied with ſundry Nobles, Barrons, and Knights, came in, and every man took his place. The King being ſet, caſting his eyes about, ſuddenly eſpied Orſon, whom when he beheld, he thought by him that Valentine was not far off, but it fell out contrary. Orſon ran through the Hall, making a lamentable noiſe, and knocking his Breaſt in moſt hideous and fearful manner, which drave the King into ten thouſand fears, and all the reſt who beheld this lamentable ſpectacle. Orſon ran again along by the Table, looking very fiercely upon every man, and making many fearful ſigns: Amongſt the reſt, at the laſt he lighted upon the traytor Grygar, who eſpying Orſon, hung his head in his boſome: Orſon having once got the ſight of him, run furiouſly upon him, and gave him ſuch a ſturdy ſtroak, that he ſmote off one of his Ears; after he began to lay upon his face, inſomuch that he put out one of his Eyes, and broke one of his Teeth: Grygar being thus wounded, began to cry but for help, but Orſon hearing him make ſuch an uproar, ran again upon him, & gave him ſuch another ſtroak, that he felled him unto the earth, overthrowing Tables, Meat, and all that ſtood before him; which drave all the beholders into admiration: and had he not been reſcued by a valiant Prince that then ſat at Board, he had never gone from that place alive: which Prince having reſcued him, began to ſay unto the King on this manner: Mighty King, conſider into what danger this man is fallen by the fury of this Wild man: and either let him dye for this preſumptious Fact, or no man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him ſay ſo; replyed; We will conſider the cauſe, and as we find it, ſo we will proceed againſt him: Bring him hither before us, that we may queſtion the cauſe of this fact. Orſon was upon theſe words brought

before

before the King, and he demanded how he durst presume so far into the Presence of his Majesty: Orson presently answered by signs, how that he had slain Valentine in the Forrest, & that he would be revenged for his death, on that inhumane traitor Grygar, and withal closed his Fist, and put it to his mouth in great rage, in token of defiance. K. Pepin perceiving by his actions, the cause of the matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barrons on this manner: My Lords, you see as well as I, that this Wild-man hath challenged Grygar to fight with him, therefore tell me your Opinions what is best to be done in this Case, for I cannot chuse but marvel why this Wild-man should find out Grygar above all the rest of the Knights here assembled: therefore let every man freely speak for I much doubt some hidden secret to lye therein, and for my part I could willingly give consent that it should be tryed forth by combat between them. When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barrons agreed to the Verdict that the K. had passed. So the battel was determined, and Grygar was brought before the King, to the intent he should undergo the Challenge against the Wild-man: Grygar hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful, and sad, and not without cause, for he foresaw hereby, that his treason would come to light, and therewithal cast an ill-favoured eye on Haufrey: Henry perceiving Grygar stand so amazed, said: Grygar, fear not, for I promise thee, howsoever it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for we will work your peace assuredly, so that thou wilt swear never to reveal the fact: yea, (quoth Grygar) I well perceive how the case will go with me, I must suffer a reproachful death for your sake: Having thus said, he left Henry, and returned unto the King, saying, Mighty King, let me make one request unto your Majesty, that you would dismiss me from this dangerous task, the reason chiefly moving me, is, that insomuch that it is not man against man, whereby a Knight may win honour, but a Wild Savage to encounter with man, & no Knight: I think I may safely (so your Grace be pleased) refuse the Combat. Nay (qu. the King) no excuse in this case can be admitted, for the Combat is granted, not onely by my advise, but also by the counsel of all my Barrons, and the reason moving us to grant it, was, that treason long lying hid, might come to light: Grygar hearing it thus concluded

ded on, grew more into deſpair: but Haufray being there preſent, comforted him again on this manner: Doubt not, for you have Equity on your part: and beſides I will ſee you well armed in all points, fitting your Knightly race.

When Orſon gathered by his wonted ſigns, that he ſhould fight with this Traitor, he was right glad, and withal, made ſhews unto the K. that Valentine was dead, whereat the K. grew wondrous ſad, and fain would Orſon have been upon the back of Grygar, but that the K. commanded him to be taken away; making ſigns unto him, that he ſhould ſtrike no more, till the time they could meet for the tryal of the truth. Again, the K. called unto Grygar, to make haſte to arm himſelf; Grygar loath to venture his life upon ſo uncertain ground, began once again to ſpeak unto the K. ſaying; Moſt dread Sovereign, I have been a long ſervitor about your perſon, both in War and peace, but you reward me not accordingly, inſomuch as you compel me to fight againſt a Man that hath neither ſence, reaſon, nor, in truth, humane ſhape: Grygar (ſaid the K.) if the truth be on your ſide, you need not fear, for you ſhall enter into the field well armed, & as for Orſon he ſhall adventure upon thee altogether unarmed. Again, you ſhall be well mounted on Horſe-back, he on foot, nor ſhall he bear any weapon. The right, you ſay, is on your ſide, wherefore maintain that right, and ſhew your valour, for the ſentence of Combat may not be recalled.

CHAP. XIX.

How *Orſon* and *Grygar* fought together, and how *Orſon* returning Victor, cauſed *Grygar* to confeſs the Treaſon, who was after hanged, and *Valentine* delivered from the Dungeon.

THE place of Combat being appointed, Orſon attended in a readineſs for his enemy; in the end, Grygar being well armed by Haufray & Henry, took his leave of them on this wiſe: My Lords, in your cauſe am I delivered over to death, evil was the day wherein I began this enterprize. Hold thy Peace (ſaid Henry) for I will defend thee from the ſentence of my Father, & work thy ſafety, ſo thou wilt be ſecret.

Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted on his Horſe, went towards the Palace gate, where this Combat was to be effected: the

hour being come, the K. repaired to the Window to behold the Combat: All the Nobles in the Court being assembled, the Judges were appointed, that no wrong should be offered on either part. So Grygar being entred the Lists, he espyed Orson, and began to draw near unto him, saying:

Villain, thou hast offered me great wrong, in putting out one of my eyes, but e're I part, I will make thee acknowledge that wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me to the K. Orson perceiving whereunto his proud speeches tended, shewed him his Nails, gnashing his Teeth together at him: whereat Grygar suddenly Couched his Spear within his Rest, and ran upon him: Orson espying the Spear bent against him, gave back, whereby Grygar was disappointed of his mark, & ran his Spear fast into the ground; Orson taking this advantage, suddenly returning back again, seized the Spear into his own hands, and having hold thereof, gave his Enemy such a stroak therewith, that he astonied him. Grygar feeling the fury of his stroak, set spurs to his Horse, & rid like a mad man about the Field: Orson ran after him with a grinning countenance, making signs to the K. that he would e're long force him to yield unto him. Grygar fearing the danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself murmured out these words: Ah Haufray, for thy cause and sake I am thus delivered over to death. Long and tedious was the Fight, but Grygar could never so much as wound the wild-man.

At last Orson cast away his Spear, and came close to Grygar, in such manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the Neck, making him so mad and furious, that he overthrew his Rider to the Earth, and with the fall he lost his Shield. Orson espying the Shield, took it up, and put it upon his own back, after he came unto Grygars Horse, and got upon him, riding round about the field, and making ill-favoured signs and tokens; insomuch, as all the beholders there present, stood as men dismayed Amongst the rest, the K. himself appeared very sorrowful, & at last began thus to speak: My Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive whereunto this fight will grow; but it is my opinion, that there is treason smotherd, and not yet come to light. Orson having now a great while ranged about the field on Horse-back after his enemy, at last forsook his Horse, and encountred Grygar on foot, insomuch that he lent him such

ſuch a blow that he ſmote him to the earth; afterward he leaped upon him, and diſarmed him of his weapons: then the next blow he ſtruck, he ſmote off one of his arms: next on the body he gave him ſuch a wound, that it cut him even to the reins of the back. Grygar having received all theſe wounds, cryed out moſt pitifully, inſomuch that every one requeſted he might have a Prieſt to Confeſs him of his ſins. The Guard that was appointed for the field, hearing theſe out-crys, ſent out a worthy Kt. to demand what he would have done; Unto whom Grygar ſaid; Sir, bring me before the K. Majeſty, & before him & the reſt of this aſſembly I ſhall reveal the Treaſons whereof I am guilty, from point to point effectually.

CHAP. XX.

How *Grygar* being vanquiſhed by *Orſon*, confeſſed his Treaſon to K. *Pepin*; and how *Haufrey* and *Henry*, had been onely Plotters thereof againſt the worthy *Valentine*.

AT laſt Grygar was brought before the K. who asked pardon for his high offence, & in the preſence of all the beholders, told him, that the onely actors in this traiterous plot, were Haufrey and Henry his Sons, & by their means he had taken Valentine and put him in Priſon, and there meaned (in ſecret manner) to have put him to death. The K. having heard out his Tale, and perceiving the whole truth of this Plot againſt Valentine, commanded Grygar to be hanged upon the next Tree he came unto. The K. having thus given ſentence againſt Grygar, called for his Horſe, & being mounted, made all haſte poſſible unto the Priſon where Valentine lay. Orſon perceiving the K. in perſon would undertake ſuch a Journey, addreſſed himſelf to run along by the Ks. Horſe, leading him the way, and making many ſigns of joy and gladneſs, all the way he went. The K. marking well all the Wild-mans behaviour, often ſpake unto his Lords in this manner: My Lords, it is wonderful that this Wild-man ſhould bear ſuch an ardent affection towards Valentine; and beſides, it ſtrikes me into a thouſand imaginations: Now you muſt know, that the K. had great cauſe, even to love this Wild-man, for that he was his natural Nephew, though as yet not revealed, neither was the time yet come, to bring it to light, till that by Clerimond (Siſter unto the Gyant Ferragus) it

should be made manifest; for at that time Clerimond had a Castle, & in it a Head of Brass, composed by Negromancy, which head told unto Clerimond all that should happen unto her all her life; & also, all that ever she had done in her forepassed time: besides, this same head was composed by such wondrous Magick Art, that it should never leave off speaking, until the Noblest Kt. in the world should enter the Castle, and then the Head utterly to give over, and never to speak more.

This Magical Spell fell out upon Valentine, whom that fair Lady Clerimond shall take to Husband, & for whom he shall endure a World of miseries, as God (willing) in the succeeding History you shall understand So leave we this, and return back again to K. Pepin, where before we left him. K. Pepin goeth on his Journey towards the Forrest, to save the Life of Valentine, and Orson being with him, brought him unto the very Castle wherein he was imprison'd. Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the K. barred the Gates, for so they were commanded by the Residue within the Castle, upon pain of Life. The K perceiving he could not enter in peace, commanded his Attendants to enter by force, & so they did. Being gotten within the Castle, they seized upon all seditious traytors, & bound them fast in chains, having so done, they went into the Dungeon where Valentine lay bound, and brought him forth unto the K.: Valentine espying the K. fell upon his knees, yielding him thousands of thanks, for that extraordinary kindness shewed to him, in delivering him out of a Hell of darkness, & fear of death. The Barrons also that attended the K. welcomed him with great joy and gladness, telling to him all that had hapned, and how that Orson had fought with the traytor Grygar, in his quarrel, and overcame him: Valentine hearing thereof, embraced Orson. Afterward, the K. commanded that all the traytors should be led into the Wood, and there hanged; and after spake thus unto Valentine; Valentine, seeing it is thy good hap to be thus miraculously delivered out of the hands of thine enemies, I would advise thee to abide with me: but he replyed: Dread Soveraign, Pardon me, for I will never return again till I have found out the Parents of whence I am Descended; and so humbly I take leave of your Majesty.

So

So here we leave K. Pepin, and only look upon Valentine and Orſon, who are taking their way towards Aquitain, to fight with the Græn Kt. a man feared of all men; For I muſt call to Remembrance, that of which I told you before, that he ſhould never be vanquiſhed by any, ſave only by a Ks. Son that had never Sucked woman. Being come to Aquitain, the people flocked from all parts to ſee the rough and unmanly ſhape of Orſon, but Valentine ſeeing their folly, made him a Jacket of ſteel to put upon him, when Orſon had it on his back, he was much offended thereat & would have thrown it away, but he much feared Valentine, and would do any thing that he commanded.

Orſon having his Steel Jacket upon his Back, looked much upon himſelf, and at laſt became proud thereof, & ſet his countenance according to his heart. Now as they were riding on their way, Valentine eſpyed a fair Squire, making much lamentation: Valentine beholding him well, ſaid thus unto him: Friend, what ayleth you to ſhed theſe tears, have you ſuſtained any wrong either by Man or beaſt: tell me what may be the cauſe, & I promiſe you the beſt of my power to relieve your diſtreſſed caſe: Alas, (ſaid the Squire) thereof I make no doubt; but know this, that the cauſe of my Laments, is the loſs of a moſt kind and gentle Maſter, and a man of the greateſt Valour in Chriſtendom. How have you loſt him? (quoth Valentine) Sir, as I was travelling towards Aquitain, to fight with the Græn Kt. thinking thereby to win the faireſt Lady in the world (called Fezon) which Lady it is not poſſible for any one to have, except firſt he overcome in ſingle combat the Græn Kt. Divers Valiant Kts. have there miſcarried: and when he conquereth them, he cauſeth them to be hanged on a Tree, and the number that are already dead, are thirty two, yielding no ſhew of mercy towards any. Is all this true (qd. Valentine) that thou haſt told me? Why then ſure he is ſome devil in mans ſhape that doth ſuch ſtrange exploits: But towards Aquitain am I journeying, to try my fortune againſt him, for I have heard much of that Lady Fezon. Ha Sir (qd. the Squire) go not thither, to loſe your life upon ſuch a Devil; Squire, ſaid Valentine, I will go forward, and mean to cope with that famous Græn Kt. but if I can eſcape him I will firſt talk with the Lady Fezon, and take her advertiſement.

Orſon

Orſon gathering ſome underſtanding of their talk, made ſigns unto Valentine that he might fight with the Green Kt. and that he would make Love to the Lady Fezon; whereat Valentine laughed heartily. By this time, think them to be come near to the City of Aquitain, ſtanding upon a hill; & meeting with an old man, he queſtioned with him, what City that was before him. Marry (quoth he) it is Aquitain. Now tell me (ſaid Valentine) where reſteth the Green Kt.? Why Sir (ſaid he) without the City, I think you are going to fight with him. I (qd. Valentine) Ah Sir (ſaid the old man) undertake not ſo foul a folly, for it is not poſſible to conquer him. Come hither my Son, and ſtand thou on this little Hill, and I ſhall ſhew thee above forty famous Kts. hanging on a Tree, whom he hath overcome. Alſo there is now but fifteen days to be accomplithed, & the Duke of Aquitain muſt part with his fair Daughter Fezon, to his great grief, & the overthrow of the whole Kingdom. Father (qd. Valentine) the Gods defend her. He had no ſooner ſpoke theſe words, but there came another ancient man of fourſcore years of age, in the habit of a Pilgrim. This man was that Blandiman, Squire to the diſtreſſed Belliſant, & he it was that led his Lady Belliſant into the Caſtle of Ferragus the Gyant, as before we have declared; Valentine eſpying him, demanded of him whence he was, and whence he came? Sir, quoth the Pilgrim, from Conſtantinople, but I could not enter into the City, by reaſon of a Pagan Souldan had begirt it with a Siege, neither could I come to deliver the meſſage on which I am ſent, wherefore I thought it my ſafeſt courſe to return. Pilgrim (qd. Valentine) what thinkeſt thou of the Green Kt. is it not poſſible he ſhould be overcome? No ſaid the Pilgrim, I adviſe you not to follow the enterprize, for if there were a whole hundred of you, he would ſee the end of you all. Father, whether go you, ſaid Valentine? Sir, I take my readieſt way to Paris, for I have a Meſſage to K. Pepin, from a Siſter of his named Belliſant, that long hath been baniſhed from Conſtantinople wrongfully, & now is the good Lady in the Houſe of a Gyant, that keepeth her, & uſeth her honorably, intending to know K. Pepins mind, whether he be conſented to theſe wrongs done unto her, for he well knoweth ſhe is a vertuous Lady, and for her ſake, offereth to put himſelf in ſingle Combat with

with the Emperor of Greece, for that he hath ſo wrongfully Baniſhed her. Palmer (qd. Valentine) I pray thee to return back again with me to Aquitain, for thither am I going, to fight with the Græn Kt. If the Gods give me victory againſt him, I will accompany thee into France, for I ſhall tell thee, only for the love I bear unto K. Pepin, undertake I this fight, for he hath been the means of my preſervation, & as a Father unto me. Therefore to him I dedicate all my labours, and reſt wholly at his command. Sir (qd. Blandiman) to this motion I will never conſent, for my Ly. hath put me in truſt to diſpatch her affairs, & I will diſcharge the duty of a truſty Servant towards her, and ſo taking my leave, I commend you to the protection of the Gods. The Palmer being gone, Valentine looked long after him, and not without cauſe, but he will not why, for this was the man that had born a part of his Mothers exiles. Well: Valentine alſo took on his journey, and after ſome few days, came near to the City of Aquitain.

Valentine beheld the City very earneſtly, and paſſing on he eſpied a pleaſant Fountain, thither he went, and alighting from his Horſe, laid him down under a Tree, to refreſh his tired limbs, and Orſon was his keeper all the while he ſlept: Anon he awaked and prepared himſelf to take Horſe again, but ſuddenly there arrived at the ſame Fountain, a moſt curious Kt. proud and of ſo haughty a Stomach that he was ſtiled the proud Kt. and withal, ſo fierce and reſolute, that he never all the days of his life asked queſtion of any man, yet if he whom he met ſaluted him not, he preſently killed him. This proud Kt. came to the Fountain, and Valentine beholding him, ſaid never a word, & Orſon alſo gazed fiercely upon him. The proud Kt. was angred in his heart, and approached near unto Orſon, & gave him ſuch a blow, that the blood iſſued out of his mouth; Orſon feeling the blow ſmart, ſuddenly took him & threw him to the earth under him, and preſently eſpying a knife at the Kts. Girdle ſmote him therewith into the body ſo deep, that he was nothing but blood. The Kt. feeling himſelf wounded, crying out aloud, whereupon Valentine coming in reſcued the Kt. out of Orſons hands, and ſaid: Fair Kt. you have offered great wrong to ſmite a poor Wild-man on this rude manner, who can ſpeak never a word: with that the Proud Kt. began thus roughly to anſwer Valentine:

Proud

Proud Miſcreant, why then doeſt thou not ſalute me? & therewith drew forth a Glave, thinking to have ſmitten him, Valentine ſeeing the blow, drew forth his Sword, & ſtruck at the proud Kt. with ſuch violence, that he ſtruck him dead, and ſaid unto him: Hereafter learn thou to ſalute men in a more friendly manner. The Proud Kt. being dead, his men fled with all the haſt they could unto Aquitain, bearing tydings of their Maſters death. Duke Savary hearing thereof; was greatly diſpleaſed, for he was his Cozen.

Amongſt the reſt, Valentine underſtood of the lamentation that was for the death of the Proud Kt. beſide the Fountain: whereupon he ſuddenly mounted on Horſe-back, & entred the City, where he lodg'd in a Burgeſſes Houſe of the ſame City, whereby it came to the ears of Duke Savary, that he had ſlain his Cozen. And the Duke commanded that Valentine & his Brother Orſon ſhould be brought before him: ſo being come into the preſence of the Duke, he began on this manner: Friend (qd. he) of whence are you? What Prince do you ſerve; and whether be ye Kts, or no? Sir (ſaid Valentine) I am a Kt. and owe my duty and ſervice to the famous K. Pepin of France. Then ſaid the Duke unto him; You have ſlain my Cozen; 'tis true (ſaid Valentine) and ſo I ſhould have done, had it been my own kinſman, for he was of ſo high a ſtomach, that he diſdained to ſpeak to any man, & ſmote ſo furiouſly at my Companion, that he had near hand killed him: which I perceiving, drew forth my Sword & ſlew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a ſtranger in this City, & hither am I come to Combat with the Græn Kt. as alſo to behold that beauteous Lady Fezon, whom the whole world admires: Wherefore I think it a Law of equity, for ſtrangers to paſs up & down in ſafety: Conſider, I have ſhewed you the cauſe of my coming: When the Duke heard Valentine ſay ſo, he ſaid unto him: Knight, right well haſt thou anſwered me, and ſeeing my Cozen hath come by this more by Pride, than Courage, I am right forrowful, & ſo I paſs it over; and pardon the deed. But in that you urge, that your coming hither was only to Combat the Græn Kt.: come you into my Palace, and there you ſhall behold the Beauty for which you thus far adventured. Moreover, that you may ſee that you are not come alone, you ſhall behold fifteen Kts. to accompany you, and new arrived for the Love of the Lady Fezon, and to try their Valour againſt the

ſaid

ſaid Græn knight their Enemy. Go, I ſay, to my Palace, ſalute my Daughter, as my cuſtom is to ſtrangers, before they adventure their perſons in battel with the Græn knight, and having preſented your ſelves before her in the ſign of love, you ſhall receive from her a Ring of Gold.

Sir, quoth Valentine; I ſhall be ready to do all Rights and Cuſtoms belonging to this place; & beſides, I will obey you in all things whatſoever it ſhall pleaſe you to command me. This conference ended, the Duke went into the Caſtle, accompanied with Valentine and Orſon. Having entred the Hall where the knights were aſſembled, Valentine beheld the Lady ſitting amongſt them, and making his way unto her, with all duty and reverence, at laſt he ſaluted her thus: Lady, you whoſe Beauty and Fame is bruited through the world, the Gods preſerve thee from the Græn knight, who I dare boldly avouch is not worthy to touch your ſuperexcellent lips. Moreover, dear Lady, may it pleaſe you to underſtand, that Pepin the Mighty King of France hath ſent me hither to preſent unto you the moſt Noble man that liveth on the earth, wherefore Lady behold him well, for he feareth no man, nor any weapon, albeit he cannot ſpeak: wherefore I aſſure you that the Græn knight is not able to withſtand his mighty force, nor make any reſiſtance againſt him, Sir (quoth the Lady) I yield unto the K. of France thouſands of thanks, as alſo to you that have taken ſuch pains to preſent ſuch a one before me: But ſay, wherefore is this worthy Champion no better cloathed, for methinks he is of an excellent perſon, well formed, ſtrait, and of a hardy countenance; & if he were waſhed & bathed in ſome excellent Liquor, his fleſh would be both white and ſoft. Lady (qd. Valentine) he never wore Garment till it was very lately, & then I cauſed this Jacket you ſee him wear, to be made fitting to his body: Moreover, I aſſure you, that when he came firſt into Paris, he came like a Wild, Savage, and naked Man, & his fleſh was ſo hard, that he neither feared wind nor cold. While he was ſpeaking theſe words, Fezon beheld him very wiſhly, for ſhe was in love with him in heart: But yet Valentine began again thus to ſpeak unto her, Lady, for my ſelf I muſt ſay ſomething alſo, therefore, know this, that only for the love of you, I have ventured my ſelf in this Climate, to ſee if fortune will ſo much favour me, that I may bear you away from all comers, by force of arms, & yet

fair Lady, one thing more I have to utter unto you, which is, that I have made an Oath unto my self, that I will never return again into France, till I have proved my fortune on the Green Kt. and with him do I intend to cope before I part hence; and either deliver him over into your hands as Conquered, or suffer Death, as many more before me have led the way. Alas, Kt. said the Lady, put not your self in danger for my sake, for methinks it is folly in any man, to endanger himself for the good of another: Again, there be many valiant Kts. have miscarried in seeking my Love, and I the unhappiest living, to see these unfortunate days. Lady, quoth he, what I have vowed, I mean to accomplish: Why then, fair Kt. God be thy speed; and therewithal drew forth two Rings of Gold, giving Valentine the one, & Orson the other, also they sat down at the Table amongst the other Kts. and were welcomed with great feastings. Being set at the Table, Fezon still fixed her eye most on Orson, & Orson upon her, as it were interchangeably glancing Love-looks one to another, with ercading gracious aspects: now in the midst of all these Feastings, the Green Kt. (as his custome was) came thundring at the Gates, only to have a sight, of the beauteous Lady Fezon, for you shall understand, that such were the conditions between him and the Duke Savary, that every day it should be lawful for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady without contradiction. Being entred the great Hall, his manner was, to cry out with a loud voice, saying: Valiant Duke of Aquitain, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me for the love of this Lady? The Duke answered, yea, I have yet within my Palace, fifteen valiant Kts. that mean to try their fortune upon thee, before they depart my Country. Then said the Green Kt. let me see them; and likewise the fair Lady Fezon: Enter, said the Duke, for thou hast free liberty. Herewithal the Green Kt. entred the Hall, sternly beholding all the Kts. one after another, at last when he had gone through them all, he began to speak to them on this manner: Lords, eat and drink, and make merry, for to morrows day shall be your last; and know that it will fall out to all your shares to be hanged on the Top of my Tree, as many before you have been served.

Valentine well marking his high words, grew ercading angry, and at last began to answer him: Proud Kt. these vaunts might well

well have lyen ſmothered in thy breaſt, for I tell thee, this day is come hither a Kt. that will hold thee tack, more then any that ever yet encountred thee, & whereas thou triumphantly haſt conquered many, he it is ſhall vanquiſh thee, & leave thy dead Corps a Prey for ravenous beaſts. Now Orſon underſtood that Valentine ſpoke all this of him, & alſo knew this to be the Green Kt. by whom ſo many valiant men had loſt their lives: inſomuch, that he ſaluted him with a fierce Uſage, and whetting his Teeth leapt from the Table, and taking the Green Kt. by the middle threw him upon his neck, as if he had been a little Child, & having him at that advantage, eſpying a wall, threw the Green Kt. with ſuch violence againſt the ſame, that all the beholders thought he had verily broken his neck, for he lay as dead, & to ſet him down again at the table, as before, and in a laughing geſture made ſigns, that he would bear upon his Neck three ſuch as the Green Kt.

At this ſudden action of Orſon, all the Kts. there aſſembled began to laugh, and coming one towards the other, ſaid: Now is he come indeed, that ſhall be the overthrow of the Green Kt.; But we cannot chuſe but lament the woful chance that ſhall befal the Lady Fezon, for he cannot ſpeak, & yet is worthy of all honor amongſt the valianteſt. The Lady on the other ſide, beholding his valour, was inſtantly overcome with the love of Orſon, that only he conquered her heart, & left all the reſt hopeleſs, of ever gaining the Garland at which they aimed. By this time the Green Kt. was again recovered, and counting it a deed of Courage, began thus to ſay in the aforeſaid preſence: Lords, this wild-man hath deceived my truſt, for he came upon me unawares, without ſaying any word: but I think good to let you underſtand, that in the morning I ſhall be better provided: and to the end I may make him an example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibbet of purpoſe, higher & ſtronger than for any that have been vanquiſhed by me; and thereon I will Hang his Beaſtly Corps, for Beaſts and Birds to make their Prey.

CHAP. XXI.

How *Orſon* encountred the Green Knight, and what followed thereof: Alſo how *Valentine* attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.

ORſon perceiving the Green Kt. diſpleaſed, and to threaten him, began as faſt to chatter with his lips, making ſigns that he would meet him on the morrow, and fight with him, and in token thereof, took off his hood, and threw it on the ground as his Gage: which Valentine ſeeing, ſpake thus to the Green Kt.: Sir, the wild man challengeth you, and in token thereof hath thrown down his Gage, whereof, if your ſtomach ſerve, I adviſe you to take it up: Hereat the Green Kt. fretted ſo exceedingly, that he replyed never a word. Duke Savary being preſent, ſaid unto him: Sir Kt I, well perceive that the Battel will grow ſtrong between the Wild Man and you, & I think that he will hold you tough play: wherefore if you chance to conquer him alſo, you may well Report of your Valour throughout the World, for he hath tryed ſome part of his courage already: & in vanquiſhing him, you need not ſtand in fear of any. The Green Kt. hereat more and more enraged ſwore by all the Gods, that e're the morrow Sun was ſet, he would try the utmoſt of his ſtrength, for he ſhould never return again from the field, but be hanged a great deal higher, than any of the reſt: and with theſe words left the Caſtle, and betook him to his Pavillion.

He being departed, the reſt of the Kts ſtill remained with the Lady Fezon, making great joy, and ſaying one to another, that the day was come, that the Green Kt. ſhould meet with his Match. On the other ſide, fame had ſo ſpread abroad the worthy act of Orſon the ſavage upon the Green Kt. that multitudes of people reſorted into the Palace, to ſee & behold him; inſomuch that the Duke commanded the Gates to be ſhut againſt them. Orſon perceiving the people ſo abundantly to approach, & hearing the noiſe, leapt up into a Window to behold the People, ſo that they willing to ſee him, & he deſirous to ſee them, at Night they all departed to their houſes. The people being departed, & ſupper ended, they paſſed the reſt of the night in merriments, & ſo to bed. Valentine being brought to his Cham-

ber,

ber, went to bed, making ſigns to Orſon to lye down by him; but he not regarding his kindneſs, laid him down upon the Ground, according to his wonted uſe, & ſo paſſed away that night. Morning being come, Valentine & Orſon went into the Hall, where they found the fair Lady Fezon, accompanied with the other Kts. holding a diſpute among themſelves who ſhould firſt fight with the Green Kt. At laſt ſtood up a worthy Kt. of France (called Galaram) and ſaid; Lords, ſo you be pleaſed, I am the man intend the firſt Tryal; to this they agreed, and preſently armed him. Being armed, he came to the Lady, taking his leave in all joy; and ſhe to requite his kindneſs, gave him free leave, wiſhing the Gods to preſerve and keep him in all danger, ſo that he may return as Conqueror: The Kt. moſt humbly thanked her, and ſo took Horſe, and haſted him towards the Tent of the Green Kt. The Green Kt. perceiving from far his approach, ſet Spurs to his Horſe, and encountred the famous Knight Galeram ſo fiercely, that he ſmote him off the Horſe to the Earth; the Green Kt. ſeeing him on the Ground, ſuddenly lighted from his Horſe, and took off the Helm from his Head: Galeram fearing nothing but preſent death, yielded to the mercy of him, but all in vain, for without pity, he firſt deſpoiled him of his Arms, & after hanged him on a tree, as he had done the reſt before. Orſon perceiving that Galeram was put to death, made ſigns with his hands that he would fight with him preſently, not letting him have any reſpite: but Valentine anſwered him again by ſigns, that he ſhould withdraw himſelf for a while; for he would firſt go try his own ſtrength on him: Hereupon he preſently put himſelf in Arms, and being armed, took his way towards the beauteous Lady, to take his leave, as it becomed him; being come before her, ſhe grew wonderous ſorrowful, & yet at laſt ſhe ſpake unto him on this manner: Alas, fair Kt. what madneſs is this in you, to adventure your ſelf for the love of ſuch an unfortunate Lady as I? Well, if thou wilt needs run into danger, go on, but I will invocate the Gods to aid & aſſiſt thee againſt thine and mine enemy; and ſo farewel.

Leave thus taken of the Lady and the reſt of the Knights, Valentine mounted his Horſe, to take his Way toward the Green Kt. As he was ready to put forth, he met with a Worthy knight who was likewiſe enamoured with the love of the Lady, and thus began

to

to say to him, Sir, have a little patience, I entreat you, and suffer me to go first. Friend (quoth Valentine) I freely grant your desire, go, and return with Victory. This Kts. name was Tyris, born in Savoy, a man of great Birth and Living, but riotously had run through his means, leaving himself little, save only his Horse and Arms: Having thus obtained leave of Valentine, he also took leave of the Lords there assembled, and so departed unto the Tent of the Green Kt; the Green Kt. perceiving Tyris to approach, leapt out of his Pavilion to welcome him. Tyris seeing him, said: Sir, presently mount thy Horse and defend thy self, for I breath out defiance against thee; the Green Kt. hearing him say so, called for his Horse which was presently brought unto him; and putting his foot into the stirrup, suddenly seated himself in the Saddle, & betook him to his Spear & Green Shield, preparing to take their course at each other; but at the first encounter, the Green Kt. ran so furiously, that he smote Tyris quite through the Body with his Spear, so that he fell down stark dead; which he perceiving, put a Cord about his neck, and hang'd him up amongst the rest.

Valentine hearing of the death of Tyris, was wonderful sorrowful, yet taking courage, he recommended himself to the Gods: having thus done, he put spurs to his Horse, and took his way speedily towards the Tent whereas the Green Kt. remained. When the Green Kt. espyed him, he was more fearful of him, than of all the rest; wherefore he called unto him, saying: Kt. give ear unto this I now shall say; seest thou yonder Tree? there shalt thou find hanging a Green Shield, fetch it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir (said Valentine) you have servants enough of your own, send them, for by me it shall never be fetched: By my Law (qd. the Green Kt.) you shall either bring me the shield, or else know this, you shall never conquer me. When Valentine had well considered these words he spake as touching the fetching of the Shield, he valiantly rode towards the Tree, but he lost his labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was sorrowful, & returning unto the Green Kt. in an angry mood, said thus unto him: Go fetch thy Shield thy self, for I cannot have it, wherefore accursed be that Magician that so fastned it: and an evil end betide him that sent me thither to fetch it. Friend (quoth the Green Kt. shall I tell thee wherefore

I

I ſent thee thither; it was, for that this ſhield was given unto me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth ſuch vertue, that no man be he never ſo ſtrong, can take it from the place where it is faſtned, ſave only he alone, by whom I ſhall be overcome; and for the doubt I ſtood in of thee, therefore I ſent thee thither, now my doubt is ſatisfied; and therefore I adviſe thee to return to the place from whence thou cameſt, & ſave thy ſelf; for ſeeing thee ſo fair a Kt. I am forced to pity thee, and take no pleaſure in thy death, from which thou canſt not eſcape, if thou fightеſt with me. Further to the end thou ſhouldeſt not think I uttered theſe words to abuſe thy patience, know this: That there is none living that can vanquiſh me, except firſt, he be the Son of a King, and nere, ſuch a one as never ſucked the Breaſt of any Woman. Now if thou beeſt ſuch a one, thou mayeſt overcome me, if not, thou doſt but ſhorten thy own days by an untimely death. At theſe words Valentine took little pleaſure, knowing that by this relation he could not be that man: but ſeeing that he was come to that Enterprize, he would not return till he had aſſayed his ſtrength againſt him: and therefore with a loud voice he ſpake thus unto the Green Kt.: Valiant and redoubted Kt. I well underſtand I am not the man by whom you ſhall be Conquered, yet whoſoever I am, I will not depart hence until I have fought with you. By the Gods (quoth the Green Kt.) then thou haſt ſome ſecret Treaſon to work againſt me, that thus thou runneſt upon thy death wilfully: but e're I part with thee, I will make thee know the price of this thy raſhneſs: and therewithal leapt upon his Horſe, bidding one of his Servants to bring unto him a box of precious Balm, the vertue of it was ſuch, that what wound ſoever he received, though never ſo mortal, it had power inſtantly to heal up the breach, having had proof thereof before.

After he had received the box of Oyntment, he ſuddenly put ſpurs to his Horſe, & couching his Spear in his reſt, both ran their courſe ſo furiouſly, that their ſpears brake in many pieces: And they ſuddenly bending themſelves to the next Courſe, moſt valiantly drew out their Swords, whereat Valentine behaved himſelf ſo Nimbly, that he gave the Green knight ſo fell a ſtroak, that he cut him through his Armour, inſomuch that the blood iſſued out in great abundance. The Green Kt. feeling himſelf wounded, lift up his arm to fetch a blow, that he ſtruck away a great piece of his Thigh,

and

and having thus wounded him, ſaid unto him: You may ſee I can wield a Sword as well as you. I told you before, that you would fall under my hand, & anon I ſhall be fain to hang your dead Corps on a tree, as I have done the reſt of the Kts. as came before you. Pagan (ſaid Valentine) vaunt not thy ſelf overmuch, for as yet I am not conquered; therefore defend thy ſelf, & therewith he gave the Green Kt. ſuch a blow, that he ſmote away a great quarter of his Shield, & the Green Kt. at the ſame encounter, brake his Sword upon the Helm of Valentine, and with the violence of the blow, felled him from off his Horſe: Valentine being always valiant, ſuddenly recovered him upon his feet. The Pagan ſeeing him riſe up, drew out a ſharp-pointed knife, and threw it at Valentine, but he ſeeing it come, ſtarted a little aſide, ſo that it miſſed him. The Green Kt. being thus unarmed of his weapons, turned about his Horſe, thinking to have recovered them again, but Valentine being on the ground, and ſeeing fit opportunity, cut off his horſe feet, ſo that both he and his Horſe came tumbling to the earth. Being on the earth he ſuddenly aroſe again, and then they were both together by ſtrength of arms holding one another. But to be ſhort, the bickering was ſo fierce between them, that they were both ſore wounded.

The Pagan quickly healed his wounds with the Balm before ſpoken of. This fight continued ſo long, that the day began to ſhut in, & both grew extream weary. The Green Kt. was ſore vexed that he could not overcome Valentine, and though he were even ſpent in wearineſs, yet he proudly bare it out, ſaying: Kt. give over, for I perceive thy wearineſs, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little honour for me to conquer thee. Go, return again to Aquitain, and reſt there this night, & report that there never encountred me ſo valiant a Kt. as thou art.

But meet me to morrow, and before thy coming, take leave of all thy friends, for thou ſhalt never return. Valentine accepted his kind offer, and was glad thereof; for he was weary & ſore wounded: So going to his horſe, which was in another field, he returned back again to the City: When Duke Savary and his Lords ſaw Valentine return, they were joyful, & received him in great honour: among the reſt there aſſembled, was Orſon, who ran & caught him in his arms, and kiſſed him. Being come into the Palace, the Duke demanded

what

by signs, how that he should put on his Armour, and take his horse and make towards the green Knights Pavillion to fight with him.

Orson understanding by signs his hearts intent, leaped & danced up & down the Hall joyfully, making signs to Valentine again, that the Pagan Knight should never escape his hands, and denying his Horse and Arms, desire nothing of him save only a Club of Wood, such a one as he was accustomed to wield, & shaking his head, made signs that he would have no other Armor against the Pagan Kt. Valentine seeing him so resolute, gave him to understand by signs, that he must put on the same Armor, and ride on the same Horse that Valentine brought out of France: for that the Knight should know no other but that it was Valentine that came against him. the wildman understanding the subtilty intended, agreed to all that Valentine commanded him. So Orson was armed with the same Armor and Horse which Valentine had imployed the day before. Orson being thus armed (contrary to his accustomed manner) seemed a right personable Knight, and made many signs that he would overcome the Green Knight & to the nonnetty of the day, without either mercy or pitty, and in these signs he was so earnest, that he caused great laughter throughout all the assembly then present. Orson thus prepared, he took his leave of Duke Savary, and embraced Valentine, & made him signs to stand in fear of nothing, for before that he returned, he would bring the Green Kt. with him either alive or dead. After this manner departed Orson, but before he took his Horse, he had forgot to take his leave of the fair Lady Fezon, so returning back to the Palace, where the Lady sat accompanied with her Train, and espying her, would have run unto her and kissed her. for by signs he gave her to understand, that for the love of her he would presently fight with the Pagan Knight. The Lady in a smile, retorted back again (in sign) that she loved him exceeding well; wishing him to bear himself valiantly, and at his return back again, she would grant him her love. Thus having taken his leave of the Lady Fezon, & the rest there assembled, he betook him to his horse, & being gone from the dukes palace, there was nothing so much talked generally throughout the City, as the wild-man was gone to Combat with the green Knight, whereat was much wonder. It was not long but *Orson* came unto the Pavillion of the Green Knight, and without any words smote the top thereof with his Spear, signifying Defiance.

The

The Green knight taking this rustick salutation in great scorn, swore by Mahomet, that he would Fetter his pride o're the evening Sun took rest, and therewithal mounted on his Steed and couching his Spear in his Rest, he entred the field against Orson.

Orson seeing him in a readiness, seemed to give back, as half afraid, & presently having gathered more Courage, they encountred with such force that both horse & men fell to the earth: Being both down, they lightly recovered their feet, drew forth their Swords, and laid one at the other right fiercely. The Green Knight being fired with anger and pride, smote Orson such a great blow that he cut the circle of gold upon his helm, and smote a great piece of his shield quite off, and wounded Orson so deeply, that with the outrage of the stroak, his sword fell out of his hand. Orson seeing the blood run down about him, was far more fierce then before, rouling his eyes, and shaking his head: at last with his sword he took the gyant such a pat upon his head, that he entred the flesh & bare a great part thereof afore him, and his sword sliding off his head, took him on the arm so powerfully, that the blood followed in great abundance. The Green knight having his former Balsamum, feared no wounds, which made Orson think it was in vain any longer to use his sword, sith he could heal himself so quickly.

Upon this, Orson threw away all his Armour & Weapons, & suddenly ran upon the Green Kt. & caught him fast by the arms so strongly, that he cast him on the Ground: Being under him, Orson took off his Helm, & held him so down that the Green Kt. did yield to his mercy; *Orson* nothing regarding his submission would suddenly have taken away his life, if Valentine had not fallen in presently to his rescue, by riding post, to see the end of the Combat. Being come, he made signs to *Orson* that he should not kill him, which *Orson* obeyed, but still kept him in subjection. And at last Valentine began to speak to the Green Kt. saying: Proud Kt. you well see that you are in the hands of your Enemy, wherefore I think it fit that you suffer present death, for look how you have done to the vanquished knights, by Hanging them on yonder Tree, so likewise you your self should be Hanged on the highest branch of all, above the rest. Alas (quoth the Green knight) you seem to be a man of pitty, furnished with courtesie, therefore my request unto

you is, to ſpare my life. No, (quoth Valentine) that ſhall I not except upon condition; Firſt, that you renounce your Paganiſm: and Secondly, go with me into France to King Pepin, telling him, that by Valentine and Orſon you were overcome in ſingle Combat. To all theſe conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my Oath to perform whatſoever you have already ſpoken.

Then Valentine made ſigns to Orſon, that he ſhould riſe, which he readily obeyed, but ſo that he left him nothing about him to make any further reſiſtance. Being upon his feet, he ſpake thus to Valentine: Sir it was you that combated againſt me yeſterday, therefore you, and none but you did I expect this day alſo; but I ſee I am conquered by the man, that in the Dukes Palace threw me on the ground. True (qd. Valentine) the very ſame. Why then (qd. the Green Kt.) I ſhall reveal unto thee one ſecret more, and I deſireth thee grant unto me my requeſt; ſend this Knight that hath

hath conquered me unto yonder tree, and if he bring away with him the Shield their faſtned, then I am well aſſured he is the man that ſhould conquer me, or elſe there is none living can triumph in my requeſt. Hereupon Valentine made a ſign unto Orſon to fetch away that ſhield, who did as he appointed him, and coming near the Tree, he ſtretched forth his arm to take it down, and ſuddenly it leaped into his hand, and ſo he brought it with him to the Green Knight. When he ſaw Orſon have the Shield, his heart ſmote againſt his ſides, and throwing himſelf at his feet would have killed them: but Orſon receiving ſigns from Valentine to the contrary, would not ſuffer him, but took him by the arms and lifted him up: Being upon his feet, he ſpake thus: Alas, I of all others, owe unto you all my ſervice, and all reverence: for now I am aſſured you are both a hardy and a valiant knight, and amongſt all other I confeſs that by conquering me, you have won unto your ſelf Everlaſting Fame.

Moreover, this aſſure your ſelf, that he that conquers me, can be no leſs than a Son unto a King and Queen, and muſt be ſuch a one as never ſucked the Breaſt of any Woman: and that this ſhall appear to be truth, I ſhall further prove it by my Siſter Clerimond, for ſhe hath a Head of Braſs that telleth her the adventures and Fortunes that to her and all her Generation ſhall befal. Likewiſe, that this Head ſhall continue ſpeaking until ſuch time as the moſt worthieſt Knight of the World enter into the Chamber where it now ſtandeth, and he being once entred, the ſaid head ſhould loſe his vertue, & is the only man to have my Siſter Clerimond to Wife; wherefore (fair Knight) theſe things thus fallen out as you ſee, I greatly deſire you would Wed my Siſter, as the moſt harmleſs and moſt Renowmedſt knight in the whole World.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Orſon having conquered the Green Knight, *Valentine* cauſed him to be Chriſtned, and ſending him to King *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green Knight.

THe Græn Knight having made this motion of the Marriage of his Siſter, gave unto Valentine a Ring of Gold upon condition that he would carry that Ring unto her: which Ring Valentine accepted, and the Græn Knight yielded himſelf as Priſoner, and is now going towards France, to accompliſh that Oath that he before had given him. Valentine having received this Ring never reſted till he had ſæn the Lady ſo commended to him. After this the Græn Knight (by conſent) was Crowned King of the Græn Mountain, and there held great ſtate: preſently upon this league of friendſhip concluded, he gave commandment throughout all his Hoſt, that every man ſhould depart away from the confines of Aquitain, and return into their Countries without doing any further damage to Duke Savaries Country. The Pagan Army thus diſmiſſed, Valentine and Orſon took & led him as a Priſoner into the City of Aquitain, wherat was no little joy: & the Duke with all his Lords, received him with great triumph into the City. The Græn Knight being thus brought as Priſoner to the Duke, began to ſay on this manner: My Lords, you owe much honor unto the knight that hath conquered me: and further, I give you to underſtand for certain, that he can be no leſs then ſon to a King; and alſo, that he never ſucked womans breaſt, for if he had, he could not have bæn my Conqueror, for ſo it was ever ſaid by the Brazen Head that ſtandeth in the chamber of my Siſter Clerimond. To the Duke, well may this carry ſome likelihood of truth, for he hath born himſelf very valiantly againſt you, wherefore I think it my part to honor him with my utmoſt endeavours.

By this time is this worthy Train entered the Dukes Palace whither the Duke commanded his Daughters preſence, and then he ſaid unto her, Daughter, behold here the Græn knight, that hath for your love made ſpoil of my Country, and I was no way able

able to repel him back, but only by this valiant Kt. that Valentine hath brought along with him, from the Court of K. Pepin, who hath extraordinarily freed us of our fears: wherefore this is my desire, that as he hath Conquered yours and mine Enemy, so he may also conquer your love, whereunto I right willingly agree that you shall have him for your Husband. The Duke having thus said, the Lady answered for her self in this manner: My redoubted Lord and Father, you know I am your daughter, therefore there is no reason why I should resist, but do submit my self to your dispose, for if I should do otherwise, it were in me great disobedience. And again, my Lord, you know promise is already past, that whosoever he was that could vanquish the Pagan Kt. should for his labour receive me for his Wife: Now my Lord, the day of my deliverance is come, so then (according to your promise) you must give him to me, and I receive him as my lawful Spouse; otherwise I shall make void the edict before gone throughout the World, and you thought false in your promises. Daughter (quoth the Duke) you have spoken right graciously, and your answer pleaseth me highly, and not only me, but all that are about us, wherefore it were not amiss to know of the Conqueror Knight whether he will have you. If he agree unto this match, I shall give him in dowry half my Country of Aquitain: hereupon Valentine standing by, demanded of Orson by signs, whether he would have the fair Lady Fezon to Wife: Who answered again by signs, that he would never have other: Then caused the Duke to be brought before him a Priest, who then contracted them: and so there time was passed with many disports. These things thus ended, Orson made signs unto the Lady, that he would never lye with her till he had gotten the use of his tongue, and that his Companion Valentine had conquered the Love of the Lady Clerimond. Of all which you shall here more hereafter.

CHAP. XXIV.

How the same night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Fezon*, an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge she gave unto him.

The day being past with great Banquetings & Solemnity, wherein Fezon was assured unto Orson, the night approached,

ed, and every man betook him to his reſt: Amongſt the reſt Valentine and Orſon were lodged moſt richly in a goodly Chamber, and in the dead time of the night Valentine had the apparition of an

Angel appeared unto him, ſaying, Valentine (know this) that in the morning thou ſpeedily depart this Land, and take along with thee Orſon, by whom the Green knight hath been vanquiſhed, and without further delay, get thee into the Caſtle of Ferragus, there you ſhall find the Lady Clerimond, by whom thou ſhalt underſtand of whence thou art deſcended.

This ſtrange viſion drove Valentine into a thouſand fears, & in great mellancholly paſſed he away the night: the day being broken, he cauſed Orſon to ariſe, & being ready, they both haſted them unto the Dukes Palace, where he found his Barrons attending on him, and amongſt the reſt there preſent, the green Kt. Not long after entred the Duke, being entred, the Green Kt. took an occaſion to give him the time of the day, and began to ſpeak unto him on this manner: Moſt renowned Duke, I freely confeſs my ſelf vanquiſhed

and

and withal renounce all right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlaſting peace with you, upon condition that you cauſe me to be Baptized Knight, ſaid the Duke, well have you ſaid, I grant your requeſt. When the Prieſt was come that ſhould baptize him, Valentine being preſent, began thus to ſay: Lords, and the reſidue here aſſembled, may it pleaſe the valiant Duke to grant me one boon, which is this, that the name of this Knight he called Pepin, it is the name of the moſt mighty King of France, that nouriſhed and foſtred me even from my Cradle. The Duke conſented unto Valentines Demand, ſo he was called Pepin; after the Baptiſm, the Duke made a motion to Valentine and Orſon for to Wed his Daughter, the beautious Lady Fezon, but Valentine not allowing thereof made this excuſe, that both he and Orſon had vowed to go to Jeruſalem, e're they did attempt any other action, after the conqueſt of the Græn Kt. The Duke hearing this excuſe, gave them leave, upon this condition, that Orſon ſhould take an Oath to return again into Aquitain, at his coming back from thence: to this they both agreed. The ſame hour alſo, the Græn Kt. took leave of the Duke of Aquitain, and went his way into France, to keep his promiſed faith to King Pepin. Before his departure, Valentine asked him for the Ring that he had promiſed; who gave it unto him, ſaying: Whatſoever he be that beareth this about him, ſhall never ſtand in fear of Drowning, nor be afraid of falſe accuſation. Then Valentine took the Ring and put it on his finger; ſo Orſon and he took leave, and departed the way toward the Lady Clerimond, to find out the Caſtle of Ferragus: and the Græn Knight likewiſe took leave for France, to yield himſelf to King Pepin. Much about this time Blandiman, Squire to the diſtreſſed Lady Belliſant, was arrived at K. Pepins Court, clad in the habit of a Pilgrim, and having ſaluted the King, he wondred at this his unlookt for ſhape, at laſt asked him from what ſepulchre he was come. Worthy K. (ſaid Blandiman) I am no Pilgrim, although I have taken that ſhape upon me, but only to come more ſafely unto you have I betaken me to this habit: wherefore know, that I am a Meſſenger ſent from the high and mighty Lady your Siſter, that by treaſon and falſe accuſations hath been baniſhed her Country by the Emperor Alexander, and at this time liveth in great ſorrow of heart, only for that you have unjuſtly bent your heart againſt her, and ſought no way to relieve her miſery.

CHAP. XXXV.

How King *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman*: and how the Green Knight submitted himself, according to his promise made unto *Valentine*.

BLandiman having delivered his Message, the King began to demand of him where his Sister was? Blandiman replyed, I know right well where she is, but I have given her my word never to discover it to any: But worthy King, if you make doubt of her loyalty, I shall bring you a man that will fight the quarrel, to prove her Honest May (qd. the King) I have seen tryal enough thereof already, by the downfal of the Arch-Priest, also I have made much means to hear of her, but cannot hear any tydings of her; and indeed that which most grieveth me, is, that she was great with Child when she was repulsed the Kingdom; neither am I assured, whether ever she was delivered of that burthen. My Lord, (qd. Blandiman) know this for a truth, that my Lady laid her great Belly in the Forrest of Orleance, and whilst she dispatched me to get her the help of a Woman, e're I could return, she was delivered of two fair Sons, the one of which was carried violently from her by a Bare into the Wood, she never wist whither; but she followed the Bare so long, till at last I found her in a dangerous sound upon the ground. I coming to her, took her up in my arms, & comforted her so well as I could, till being somewhat recovered, in woful Sighs she unfolded unto me the whole manner of the loss of her Child by the Bare: and for the other she had left it under the Tree: I hearing her say so, hasted towards the Tree whereas I left her, but being come thither, I could not find the other Child neither. And thus (worthy King) have I related unto you the whole story of your Sister and her 2 Infants in the forrest: & other tydings have I none, but this, that I am that Blandiman that you gave unto your Sister to attend her, when she married the Emperor Alexander. The King giving ear unto this Tale, at last said: Alas Blandiman, thy words strike me into a Thousand fears, what should be become of my Sister: but seeing thou canst tell

no

no more, tell me yet how long ago this is that thou haſt told me. My Lord (qd. he) it was even that day you met me in the Forreſt of Orleance, and I related unto you the piteous tydings of your Sifters baniſhment. This ſtruck the King into ſuch an admiration, that he began to recollect his wits, and then preſently came into his mind the finding of Valentine in the Forreſt, and how by the ſame Valentine, Orſon was conquered in the ſame wood. Then he began to think on the ſtory that Blandiman had told him, and thereby knew that theſe were the two Babes brought forth by his Sifter, wherefore he ſent for the Queen, and other Ladies, to let them underſtand what Blandiman had declared, ſaying: My Lords, I have long time nouriſhed & brought up in my Court two poor Children; & now it doth plainly appear they are Sons to an Emperor, & my near kinſmen: Valentine the one, whom I found in the Forreſt of Orleance, brought forth there by my Sifter Belliſant, in the time of her exile; and Orſon who was likewiſe vanquiſhed by Valentine, to be his Natural Brother, & both Sons to the Emperor of Greece. At theſe tydings all the Court was wondrous joyful, ſave only Haufray and Henry, who in outward ſhew ſeemed glad, but were in their hearts very ſorrowful, for above all other they deſired the death of Valentine, that next him they might work their wills on their younger Brother Charlemain, againſt whom they chiefly oppoſed themſelves, as hereafter will more plainly appear.

But to return back again to Blandiman, who hearing the King ſpeak ſo much of the two Children, demanded of the K. if he knew in what Country they were: Why (ſaid the King) one of theſe I have brought up in my Court along time, in ſuch Faſhion, that he is become a right Valiant Knight, and by his Valour hath Conquered his Brother, being a Wild-man, Living in the Wood at Orleance like a Beaſt, and one that did much damage to all the Country thereabout. Having conquered him, he brought him to my Court, where having lived ſome ſmall time, they both departed, and took their way towards Aquitain, to fight with a right Worthy Champion, called the Green Knight, and ſince their departure I never heard what became of them, Sir, ſaid Blandiman, according to the Tale you have told, I remember well; that near Aquitain I met two ſuch, but I am troubled that I knew them not. So the

K. munting at these accidents, caused Blandiman to be highly feasted, and held as a companion amongst his other Lords.

Now it hapned, that on the same day the Green Kt. (of whom we have before made mention) arrived at Paris at the Ks. Court: as soon as he came into the presence of the K. he saluted him with great reverence. The K. seeing him all in Armour, marvelled much thereat, and at last demanded the cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and wherefore he came: The Green Kt. replyed again on this manner Honourable King, know that I am descended from the Sarazens, both by Father and Mother; and true it is, that I am that Kt. that for the love of the Lady Fezon, Daughter to the Duke of Aquitain, have for one whole year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my subjection, and having him thus under me, I took a Truce with him for six months, upon these Conditions; that if within that time he found not forth a Kt. that by force of Arms should conquer me, I was to have his Daughter Fezon to Wife; on the other side, if I were conquered, I should remove away my siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing any further Dammage. So it is, that a long time I was fought withal, by divers valiant Kts. of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endured death, and there still hanged upon a Tree; At last it so fell out, that there assailed me 2 worthy Kts. the one named Valentine, and the other Orson. Valentine fought with me one whole day, wherein he bore himself so bravely, that Night coming on, we were forced to give over, all Wounded, tyred, and weary: The next morning when the Battle should be again Renewed, his Fellow Orson, armed in Valentines Armour, entred the Field in most fierce and disdainful manner, offering me Defiance; I scorning any Competitor, addressed out my self against him, but little availed my strength, for in the end he overcome me, and would have taken away my life, had not Valentine come in upon us, and rescued me, upon Condition: First, that I should forsake Mahomet: Secondly, that I should come unto you, and yield my self at your commands; and to stand to your censure either in life or death. Again, when I received Baptism; he caused me to be called Pepin, and so is myname.

The King having heard all this long story from the Green Kt.

made

made this answer in the presence of all the Barons: Welcome to us, and of your Company we are right glad, live with us in our Court, and be jocond, for I freely grant you your life, and promise you further, that if you will tarry with us in our Country, I will endow you with many fair Lands and Possessions. The K. shewed himself thus gracious, demanding of him where these Kts. were, that had conquered him: Parry (qd. the Green Kt.) I left them both at Aquitain with the Valiant Duke Savary, who holdeth them in as great respect as any that are remaining in his Court.

Thus you may now perceive, that by the words of Blandiman and the Green Kt. King Pepin had perfect intelligence of his beautious Sister, and his two valiant Nephews. After all these tydings happned, K. Pepin made a solemn Vow, that he would go himself in person into Greece, to tell the Emperor of these gladsome tydings, and to take order to send abroad into all Lands to find her out.

CHAP. XXVI.

How K. *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to bear these tydings: and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty Souldan, who had beleagured *Constantinople*.

KIng Pepin having put himself in a readiness to depart into Greece, went forth, and before much time was spent, he arrived at Rome. The Pope hearing of his approach, received him with great honour, and much Feasting. Upon a day, as he sat at dinner with the Pope in his Palace Pontifical, there came tydings unto him, that the Great Soldan of Ægypt had besieged Constantinople. The Kt. that brought this message, after his salutations ended, began thus to proceed: Holy Father, the Sarazens with much power have besieged and wrongfully over-run Constantinople; and I am charged to crave your aid against these Enemies of Christendom. When the Pope understood these ill-welcome tydings, he was driven into a wondrous dump, not knowing any present way to send them relief: but King Pepin being in presence, comforted him greatly, and said: Holy Father, take no care for this business, for I request but a Competent Sum of Money and Men, and I shall lead them to Constantinople with such a Courageous heart,

heart, that I shall put the Soudan and his forces to the worst, such an inveterate hatred bear against these Pagan Devils. The Pope hearing him so resolute, thanked him for his courageous heart, and said unto him: Right Christian King, seeing thou dost proffer thy self in person to undertake this Service, I shall with all convenient speed provide for a business of such import. Presently hereupon all things being prepared, with an Army of Thirty thousand Romans, King Pepin departed, and as soon as possible he could, he arrived at Constantinople. Being thither come, he found the City round begirt, and the Citizens in great fear of the Soldans Army, betaking themselves into the City, keeping the same against all the force of the Pagans.

The Emperor himself was forced to retire into the City, and being cooped up in so small a Compass, his troubled thoughts evermore ran upon the Lady Bellisant, whom he had cruelly Banished; always fearing that she was dead, for it was now full twenty Winters past, since the time of her exile. By this time is King Pepin come within two miles of Constantinople, and there landed his men, raising Pavillions, pitching of Tents, and ranging his forces into battel-array. The Soldan having knowledge of his arrival, and also of his provision, was much abashed thereat, and with all diligence returned to his strong Pavillion, and being set down in his magnificence, there came unto him certain of his camp, fearfully and doubtfully, saying thus unto him: Great and mighty Soldan, we come to give you true intelligence, that there is lately arrived to the number of two hundred thousand Romans, to bid us present battel, under the conduct of Pepin King of France: Wherefore it only resteth now, that you take sudden advice how to prevent and resist these Forces: Peace screech Owls (qd. the Soldan) be not afraid, for you are deluded by some false report; the whole Roman Nation is not able to furnish forth such an Army. Go on I say courageously, for I swear by Mahomet, e're long I shall bring under my subjection, both the Kingdom of Rome and France also: wherefore call up your troops, plant them, & put your squadrons in readiness to receive them.

The morrow following, K. Pepin set his Army in order of Battel, fiercely to assault the Pagan Host, and secretly sent a Letter to the Emperor, being in the City, whereby he requested the Emperor, that

that they within the City ſhould put themſelves in readineſs, and iſſue out upon the Pagans on that ſide, for K. Pepin and his companies would receive them on the other ſide, then being all encompaſſed about, there was hope to get the day of the Sarazens.

The Emperor received theſe Letters joyfully, & did as King Pepin commanded them, & iſſued forth of the City, bidding battel to the Sarazens. They were no ſooner entred the field, but they perceived the Army of King Pepin marching on with Banners diſplayed, and noiſe of Trumpets ſounding in moſt courageous manner. This made the Pagans to look about, and the Soldan calling to him 2 of his hardieſt Men of War, commanded them ſecretly to go through the Hoſt of the Chriſtians, and if it were poſſible, to number them. Theſe two did as the Soldan commanded, but being come near the Hoſt of K. Pepin, the Green Kt. eſpying them coming down a little Hill; drawing ſomewhat nearer, he diſcerned they were Sarazens, and preſently putting ſpurs to his Horſe, ran againſt them with ſuch fury, that his ſpear brake upon his thigh: the Sarazens ſeeing him run ſo fiercely, did not flye, but received him valiantly, as hereafter followeth in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XXVII.

How the Green Knight juſted againſt the two Sarazens, and having ſlain the one, the other fled: and how K. *Pepin* and his Hoſt was lodged within *Conſtantinople*.

THE Green Knight having recovered a new Spear, he ran fiercely againſt both the Sarazens, and hitting one of them in a very dangerous place ſmote him to the Earth, ſo that he never roſe. then making againſt the other, he gave him ſuch a wound that he ſuddenly fled away: K. Pepin ſeeing this accident, preſently aſſailed the Soldans Hoſt, and Myllon Daugler ſlew the King of Aquile, and three other e're he gave over the field, with many and divers other worthy deeds of Chivalry: The Soldan ſeeing him ſo play the Devil in his Hoſt, cryed out, to follow Daugler that had made ſuch havock: So they did as he commanded, purſuing him ſo cloſe on both ſides, that at length they cut off one of his Horſes thighs,

thighs, forcing him to fall upon the earth, and had there perished, had not the Græn Kt. (maugre all the Sarazens) thrust himself into the Preis, slaying and beating down as many as made any resistance, and in the end so relieved Daugler, that he freshly horsed him, and brought him clean out of Danger. After this they both joyned together in such furious out-rage, that they spared none that came in their way. Fierce was this Battle, and endured long, but King Pepin and his men made great slaughter amongst the Pagans: but notwithstanding all this their valour, they had lost the day, had it not been for the Emperor, that with his Host valiantly assailed the Pagans on the other side, and made amongst them a bloody slaughter. The K. seeing the courage of the Emperour so great, gathered together again his scattered troops, and entred into the Battle again with great fury, and now were the Pagans begirt round about. As soon as the K. came unto the sight of the Emperor, he said unto him: Great Prince, shew thy self right valiant, & this day, e're night, I shall tell thee tydings of the Lady Bellisant.

These words added fresh Courage unto the Emperor, who cryed out to his men: Courage for Constantinople, and he that wins honour shall be richly rewarded. And with these words entred into the thickest of the Battle; where he, K. Pepin, and the Græn Kt. so valiantly behaved themselves, that which way soever they turned, they made way before them.

Now began the Sarazens to doubt whether they should ever escape away alive, & therefore fearing the worst, betook themselves to flight. But their flight being espyed by the King of Sclavonia, who led the Rear-ward of the Soldan, presently rushed in with his Troops, consisting of fifty thousand fighting men making withal so great a shout that it seemed by the sound thereof their part got the better. The Emperor and the King perceiving their coming, wisely considered that their men were tyred and out-worn, and the Enemy fresh and lusty sounded a Retreat, and Retired themselves and all their Souldiers into the City. The Soldan seeing this, followed upon them, and strongly besieged the City round about, so that neither the Emperor nor the King could issue out thereof. Thus they abode till they were well nigh famished, thinking thereby utterly to overthrow the Christians. So leave we them, and return to Valentine & Orson, who for

the

the love of Clerimond, have adventured, as you have already heard.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the strong Castle, wherein fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen-Head they had knowledge of their Parents.

After many days travel, at last Valentine & Orson lighted upon an Island, in which Island stood a Castle strong & impregnable; the covering whereof was of shining mettal, glittering in the Sun, that it drave Valentine into suspition that it was it, whereunto the Green Kt. had directed him to have a sight of the fair Lady Clerimond. At all adventures he maketh way towards the Castle, & at last entered into this Island by one of the Ports thereof. Being entered, he demanded who was the owner of that Castle which appeared so sumptuous to the eye: Answer was returned, that the Castle was in the keeping of the fair Lady Clerimond, sister unto the Gyant Ferragus, and builded by a mighty man in substance, a Sarazen, the which Sarazen, amongst all other his excellent works done in this Castle, he caused one chamber to be richly adorned: of the which Chamber more shall be spoken of it in its place.

Moreover, it was told unto Valentine amongst other things, that in the chamber stood an excellent pillar made by Art, upon the which Pillar stood a Head of Brass, composed a long time before, by the Negromancy of a Fairy, the which Head was of such an excellent composition, that it gave answer to any thing that was demanded: Valentine hearing this strange Relation of the Castle, was right glad, for now he was verily perswaded that this must needs be the very Castle he had so long time sought, and wherein the Green Kt. told him he should find his Sister, so highly praised of all Nations for her excellent beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he left questioning any further, & went on his way, accompanied with Orson to see if he could get entrance into this castle. By this time they were come to the gates thereof where thinking to enter, they were refused by ten sturdy Knights, that kept the Gate night and day.

When they ſaw Valentine and Orſon make proffer to enter, they ſaid unto them: Lords, or whatever you be, withdraw your ſelves back, for into this Caſtle entereth none, of what birth ſoever, without the leave and licence of a Maiden, to whom we (as Guard) do appertain. Why (quoth Valentine) go tell her, and ask whether it be her pleaſure we enter or not: Hereupon one of them entered the chamber where fair Clerimond was, and kneeling unto her ſaid: Lady, before your Gate ſtandeth two Gallants, that would enter your Caſtle, they ſeem fierce and courageous, full of high ſpirit, and men far diſagreeing from the Laws & Religion of our Countrie: Now fair Lady ſay, ſhall they have entrance? Deſcend (qd. the Ladie) while I go forth into a Windowto take a view of them, and let the Gates be ſurely kept, for I mean to queſtion with them my ſelf. The Porter did as ſhe commanded, then Clerimond that was well languaged, leaned out of a window, upon a Cuſhion covered with gold, and ſaid unto Valentine: What are you, that dare offer to enter my Caſtle without leave? Lady, (qd. Valentine with an undaunted courage)

I am a Kt. that travelleth this way, and would gladly speak with that Head of Brass that remaineth within this Castle, if it be your pleasure, because (as I understand) it resolveth doubts. Knight, qd. the Lady, upon these terms you may not enter, but if you can bring me any certain signs from one of my Brethren, either from King Ferragus, or the Green Kt. Lord of Tartary, then you may freely enter this Castle; or by noe other means yet you may enter, that is by the Seneshal of this place, with whom you may run sir courses with your Spear, to try your valour; wherefore now be advised, either fetch me some certain tokens from one of my Brothers, or try your fortune in single combat, as I have told you. Lady, qd. Valentine, against your Seneshal I dare adventure, for I had rather win my entrance by ponderous blows, than by entreats, and fawning speeches. This choice chose Valentine, rather then to betray the King which he had brought along with him, given him by the Green Kt. to present to his Sister Clerimond. The Lady seeing his resolute hardiness, suddenly fell in love with him, and presently went into the Chamber where the Head of Brass stood, and said unto it: what is that Kt. of courage that would so gladly enter this Castle? Lady, qd. the Head, of that Kt. shall you know nothing, until such time as you have brought him before me. Clerimond at this answer seemed very sorrowful, for she was greatly in love with Valentine.

CHAP. XXIX.

How (when as *Valentine* was before the Castle, talking with the Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*: And how he justed for the entrance; and overcame the Seneshal.

CLerimond pondring in her mind the words of Valentine, being overcome with affection, said on this manner: Ah! Valentine is valourous, and beautiful, and if I have power over the Head of Brass, I shall never take other Husband than this Kt. Hereupon she sent for the Seneshal, & told him, that this Kt. would enter the Castle. The Seneshal thereat enraged, began thus: Lady, if he be so hardy to attempt it, I shall quickly make him know that he cometh to late too gain your love.

Seneshal (said the Lady) since it must be so, go arm you presently,

and ſo he departed to put himſelf in Arms, being armed, he mounted his Horſe, couched his ſpear in his reſt, & withal iſſued out of the gate in readineſs. The Lady alſo, got into a window to behold the combat. When Valentine ſaw the Seneſchal to come towards him, he couched his ſpear, & putting ſpurs to his horſe, they met ſo fiercely, that their Spears brake in pieces: preſently having a new ſupply, ſuddenly they met ſo fiercely, that they fell to the ground Horſe & man: but Valentines Horſe got up with his Maſter, Valentine being thus ſaved by his Horſe, ſaid unto the Seneſchal: Riſe up, and newly mount your ſelf, for there is no honor in conquering an enemy at advantage. Whereupon the Seneſchal was freſhly mounted, and new ſpears given them again: then took they a freſh Carær, & herewithal Valentine ſo encountred him about the head, that he bore away his Helm, and threw both Horſe and man down upon the earth: The Seneſchal feeling himſelf in danger, ſaid thus unto Valentine: Sir. I know not from whence you are, nor of what Parentage, but never

in

in my life found I a man of thy valour, wherefore I yield, & withal give thee leave to enter this Castle at thy pleasure, (only upon this condition that you speak not unto the Lady Clerimond without my leave.) Quoth *Valentine* thou hast requested that which I will not grant, and know, it was for her love that I came hither, & though I never yet saw her, yet are my thoughts on her. Therefore from hence I will never part till I have spoken with her, & also with the Brazen-Head. The Lady all this while standing at the window, wondered what conference passed between these two champions, & at last thus said unto one of her Maidens. See how indiscreet this Seneschal is, to fight with such a valiant man, who long since might have taken away his life. When *Valentine* saw the great pride of the Seneschal, & that he stood it out with him, being his Prisoner, he presently run against him another course, & therewithal gave him so deadly a stroak, that he ran him clean through the body, so that he fell off his Horse stark dead, at the which the Lady Clerimond was exceeding joyful, commanding them to set open the Gates, & that *Valentine* should be brought up unto her in the great Hall. When that the Lady beheld *Valentine* well, she came towards him, & said unto him on this manner: Knight, you are most welcome, for I never saw a more valiant & courageous man all the days of my life: Enter my Castle, for it appeareth by your Valour & chivalry, that you are descended from the Loins of some Royal Stock. Lady, know this for a certainty, my name is called *Valentine*, a poor Adventurer, for neither my self, nor this my Companion, never knew from what Stock we descended. He was nourished by a beast in the forrest, & lived there like a wild-man, till when as I conquered him by my Sword, besides, he never spake in his life more than you see at this instant. Wherefore Lady, thus far have I travelled to get knowledge of my parent, but chiefly to gain the love of you, being so fair a Lady.

CHAP. XXX.

How *Valentine* shewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring, which the green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Brazen-Head, which told him from whence he was descended.

VAlentine having purchased free entrance by overcoming the Seneschal, at last he shewed the Ring that the Green Knight had

had given him, and smiling, delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the token, saying: fair knight, had you shewed this Ring when you first craved access into this Castle, you had never endured the danger that you have now escaped: but sith it hath pleased you to try your valour, I cannot better commend you, than to admire your hardy and courageous heart. Whilst Valentine and the Lady were thus talking together, the Tables were spread, the Lady, sat down, and Valentine was also placed just against her, in whom she took her great delicity, as he in her: Dinner being ended, Clerimond arose from the Table, and taking Valentine by the hand, said thus unto him: Sir, well have you purchased your welcome, deserving to enter into my privie Chamber, and so you shall, even that Chamber wherein the Brazen Head standeth, the which Head shall declare all that you can desire, and make no doubt but it will tell you most joyful tydings: wherefore both you and your companion come along with me, for I gladly long to hear, as you desire to be heard. Hereat Valentine grew exceedingly joyful: first, for that he should now understand that which he long desired to know: secondly, that the Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their way out of the Hall, she brought him into that Chamber: being come unto the door thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the Chamber door guarded on this manner: On the one side a grim, fearful, and ugly shaped Villain, strong and crooked, armed with a Club of Iron upon his neck, which offered to make resistance: On the other side of the Chamber door stood a most fierce Lyon, these two continually kept the door, that none could enter in without the Ladies leave or else fight with the Villain Lyon, Valentine perceiving these two watchmen to make resistance, demanded of the fair Lady Clerimond the meaning thereof, who answered, These two you see here are to keep this Door, that none may enter without fighting with them, for that divers have perished in their presumption: And again, the Lyon is of such fierceness, that he will suffer none to pass, unless the Son of a King, and to such she shews her self very loving.

Lady (qd. Valentine) happen what will, yet I mean to try my fortune with the Lyon, and by main strength caught him about the body, whereat the Lyon forsook him, and let him pass. Orson likewise assailed the Villain, and ere he could be ready to lift up his

Club

Club of Iron, he took him by the middle so stronglie, [illegible] he threw him against the wall, he took away [illegible] Club, & gave him such a blow that he tumbled on the ground, & had it not been for the Ladie Clermond, he had slain him in that place. Being both thus vanquished, the Gate was opened, & they entred the [illegible]ber, wherein they [illegible] see all the world could afford, as Gold, Azure, Rubies, Saphir[illegible] great multitude of precious stones: within this chamber [illegible] Pillars of Jasper, marvellous rich, of which two of them are yellow as most fine Gold, a thi[illegible], more green then grass, a fourth more red then a flame of [illegible] between these Pillars was a precious Stone, called an Ameris, [illegible] then the heart of man can devise, in the midst of which stood a [illegible] of Brass, set upon a [illegible] Pillar. Valentine wondring at the ri[illegible] of these objects, [illegible] eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it would publiqu[illegible] open concerning his Birth. At length, when everie voice was silent, the Head began to speak after this manner: Thou famous Kt. of Royal Parentage, art called *Valentine the Valiant*, of whom it may justly be said, there was never the like appeared before me: thou art the Man, who of right ought to marry with the Lady *Clermond*, thou art Son to the Emperor of *Greece*, and thy [illegible] Name is *Bellisant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of *France*, who [illegible] suggestions hath been banished her Country, and Husbands Bed: know this, thy Mother is in *Portugal*, in the Castle of *Ferragus*, who hath had the keeping of her these twenty years; *Pepin* is thy Uncle, and the wild-man who hath ever accompanied thee, is thy natural Brother; you two were delivered [illegible] the Empress Bellisant, in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and being brought forth, thy companion was taken away by a ravenous Bear, and by her he was nourished in that Wood, amongst the rest of her Whelps, and never sucked he [illegible] other: For thy part *Valentine*, thou wast found the very same day in that forest by King *Pepin*, who hath nourished thee tenderly, and brought thee up to mans estate: Further, thus much I shall also tell thee, that this thy Brother here present, shall never have use of his Tongue, till a Thread be cut under the same, and then thou shalt hear him speak plainly. Therefore proceed as thou hast begun and thou shalt prosper, for my time is at a Period sith thou art come to enter into this Chamber.

Valentine

Valentine taking well all that the Dean had uttered, fell upon the bosom of his brother Orlando, and so on to his young cousins embraces and congies: changed each of them the kiss of love, saying all this, began to make out into [illegible] Alas, courteous Sir, all other [illegible] to joy at this your happy arrival, for in your [illegible] of [illegible] to enter, where hope hardly [illegible] to again [illegible] understand this your fortune [illegible] Man [illegible] Genius [illegible] [illegible] (as [illegible] and take [illegible]

[illegible] Valentine [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

This Pacolet being in the Caſtle, obſerved the behaviour of Valentine, and when he had fit time, he addreſſed himſelf for Portugal, to bear news to Ferragus, how all matters had paſſed at the Caſtle. So he betook himſelf to his wooden Horſe, and in a moment of time (ſetting the pin for that part) he arrived there, according to his deſired wiſh, and related the ſtory unto Ferragus. When Ferragus heard this Tale, he grew exceeding angry againſt Valentine, for that he ſhould have his Siſter in Marriage: Alſo, he grew enraged at her, that ſhe ſhould grant her love unto him (being a Chriſtian Knight) ſwearing by his Gods to take revenge upon them both: But all this he diſſembled unto Pacolet, bidding him return and bear this meſſage to Clerimond, that the Kt. Valentine, who ſhall have her to wife, is right welcome, and that e're long I will come in perſon to viſit them, accompanied with a gallant Troop of Nobles, and then ſhall their Nuptials be royally Solemnized: So Pacolet took leave and got him on his horſe, and was in an inſtant at home again. Being come, he preſently went into the Preſence of the Lady Clerimond, and ſaid unto her: Madam, I have been in Portugal with your Brother Ferragus, who is glad of your choice with Valentine, and promiſeth e're long to be here in Perſon, and to make a Royal Marriage. At this tale the Lady ſtood amazed, & at laſt began to anſwer him thus: Ah Pacolet, is this true that thou haſt told? Aye me, the Gods defend my Brother from Plotting any treaſon againſt me, for I am well aſſured he could never abide a Kt. of France, nor any other that is a Chriſtian; I am right angry that thou didſt not acquaint me with thy departure, for I had a ſerious buſineſs for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a Chriſtian-woman, one that of long time hath had her abiding with my Brother Ferragus, in the Caſtle that he now holdeth.

CHAP. XXXII.

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugal* to ſee the Lady *Belliſant*, *Valentine*'s Mother, his returning back, and the news that he brought.

THE Lady having ended her tale, Pacolet made her this anſwer: Lady, ſeeing you are ſo earneſt, I ſhall for your ſake, make another journey into Portugal, and before to morrow mid-day I ſhall bring you tydings whether ſhe be there or no. Valentine hearing him ſay ſo, replyed: That thou canſt not do, except the Devil be in thee: The Lady Clerimond ſaid unto Valentine: Let him alone, for by art he hath provided, that he will ride more than a thouſand miles a day. Hereat Valentine marvelled much, and calling Orſon unto him, he cut the Thread from under his Tongue, that hindred his ſpeech, which being done, he ſpake preſently, where he related the ſtory of his life led in the Forreſt, which held them the

moſt

moſt part of that evening. On the morrow, according as Pacolet had promiſed, he was found in the Hall before Valentine, ſaying unto him on this manner: Sir, I am returned from Portugal, and have ſeen your Mother in good health: Friend (quoth Valentine) thou art right welcome, for it is ſhe I only deſire to hear of. Love (qd. Clerimond) be not too haſty, for if my Brother come not hither, we will go into Portugal to him, and then we ſhall have both our hearts deſire. Nay ſurely (qd. Pacolet) your Brother will come hither: I (qd. the Lady) but I ſtand in fear of him, leſt that he work ſome Treaſon againſt us; for this laſt night I dreamed a fearful dream, at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was: I dreamed I was in a great water, in the which I ſhould have periſhed, had it not been for a great face that drew me out thereof, being out, methought I ſaw a Griffin iſſue out of a Cloud, who with his tallons took me up, and carried me I know not whither. Love (qd. Valentine) give no reſpect at all to dreams, for they be but deluſions of a melancholly mind. 'Tis true (qd. ſhe) but they trouble me every night. Having ended this diſcourſe, they entred into a fair Arbor, garniſhed with great varieties of Flowers, repoſing themſelves ſome few hours in long dalliance, where we will leave them, & you ſhall hear that the ſame day arrived Ferragus the Traytor, at the Caſtle of Clerimond.

The Lady hearing of his coming, preſently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and ſaid unto her; Siſter, above all creatures living, I have moſt deſired to ſee you, tell me, I pray you which is the Kt. you mean to make your Husband? This, fair Brother is the man. Whereupon Valentine ſaluted him with great reverence. Ferragus ſaid unto him: Fair Kt. Ye be Welcome into theſe quarters, for the love of my Siſter Clerimond; for ſeeing it is ſo fallen out, that you have conquered my Brother the Green Kt. and ſent him into France, cauſing him to be Chriſtned, even ſo have I a great deſire to be baptized, to become a Chriſtian and follow your Religion.

Valentine believed all theſe words which he had ſpoken; but under theſe fair promiſes he ſmothered Treaſon; yet at laſt Valentine began thus to ſay unto him: Sir, it is reported to me, that within your Caſtle, for the ſpace of theſe twenty years, you have maintained

a Christian Woman, who is Mother unto me, whom I would gladly see, her name is Bellisant, Sister to Pepin King of France, and Wife unto the Emperor of Greece. By Mahomet, said Ferragus, you say truth, and to the end your eyes may behold her, you shall go along with me into Portugal, so shall you rightly be informed whether she be the Lady you seek for, or no; Gramercy (qd. Valentine) and so Ferragus left him, and said unto his Sister Clerimond after this manner: Sister, my souls joy, I desire your advancement more than any thing on earth, and am glad you have found out so worthy and valiant a Knight for your Espousal; wherefore to knit up all at once, my desire . that you would go with me into Portugal, and there with the consent and applause of all my Nobles, we intend highly to Solemnize your Nuptial-day.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* were betrayed by the Treachery of *Ferragus*; and how he committed them to prison, with their Woful lamentations.

FErragus having thus gotten their good wills to depart for Portugal, put all his Ships in a readiness, and packing up all their provision, they put forth to Sea. Being now at Sea, Ferragus fell from all his former words of comfort, and began to plot the death of Valentine and Orson. In the dead time of the night, when the 2 Brethren were at rest in their Cabins, he caused them secretly to be taken forth of their beds, and committed them to bands, muzling their eyes also, that they could not see: Now, when Clerimond saw what was done to her love, she fell into an extream agony, and with watry eyes began thus to vent her lamentations: Alas dear Valentine, our joys are suddenly turned unto sorrow; thou hast bought my love at too dear a rate, when thou art not only thus misused, but even in danger of thy life: Cursed be the day of my birth, for with much danger hast thou purchased my Love. Alas, alas, what shall I do? rent heart, weep forth my eyes, when such a valiant, hardy, and most magnanimous Knight must be thus tortured for my sake: Thou hast received the trust I put in thee, by working so foul an Act against my Love:

Love: thou haſt robbed me of all joy, and brought upon me an untimely death. Further, know this, that if you put to death theſe 2 Knights, you carry to your grave the name of a Villain. Let them alone, their death will work you ſmall content: or if there be no remedy, ſpare them and ſeize firſt upon me, and caſt me into the ſea, for I would not live to ſee ſuch two Innocents falſly put to death without deſert. Yea, even ſo much was the Lady perplexed, that with very hearts ſorrow, ſhe would have ſlain her ſelf, or elſe violently have leaped over-board into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiving her in this deſperate fit, gave ſtrict command that ſhe ſhould be well attended by ſome of his Barons, and eſpecially that ſhe ſhould not ſo much as ſpeak a word with either of the priſoners, thus leaving her to her laments; and the Chriſtians, both Valentine and Orſon faſt bound in bands. Valentine perceiving himſelf thus betrayed, began thus to bemoan his hard hap: Alas, quoth he, how contrarily hath fortune dealt with me? I have ſpent all my youth in travel and danger, only to find out the Parents that begot me, and ſee now when hope had well nigh ſet an end to all my ſorrows. I am unhappily fallen into the hands of mine Enemies that only ſeek my death. Alas Brother Orſon, how ſuddenly are all our joys blaſted, and our mirth turned into mourning? On this wiſe complained Valentine and Orſon, but all this while are they on their way towards Portugal, and ſhortly after arrived at the Caſtle of Ferragus. Being there arrived, tydings was brought to the Lady Belliſant, that two Chriſtian Knights were come along with them as Priſoners: at which news ſhe quickly left her Chamber, and came to have a ſight of them. When ſhe was come near unto them, and had well reviewed them, at laſt ſhe ſaid thus unto them: Children (quoth ſhe) of what Country be you, and where were you born. Lady (quoth Valentine) we be of France, and born not far from Paris: Ferragus perceiving the Lady to ſpeak unto them, ſharply rebuked her, ſaying: Lady, leave your queſtioning, for except they renounce their faith, they ſhall miſerably end their days in Priſon: and therewithal called unto him a Jaylor, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept only with bread and water. This miſery was not ſufficient, but more than that, certain churliſh Sarazens ſtanding by, ſmote theſe two Children with their fiſts and ſtaves.

After

After Ferragus had committed them, he got him up into his Palace, and called for his Sister Clerimond unto him; when she came before him, she could not forbear tears, which made him thus say unto her: Sister, leave weeping, for I swear by Mahomet, you have too long doted upon the Brazen-Head, as well appeareth, in that you make your choice with one of the contrary Religion: but change your mind, for it is a shame that you should first take him to Husband, that hath been the overthrow of our Brother the Green Knight; nert a Christian, whom our Laws do abhor. Forbear (I say, therefore) and be ruled by my direction, and I will raise your Fortunes, by matching you unto that Puissant King Trompart. Forget I say, these two Frenchmen, for shortly thou shalt see, I will make them shorter by the head. Brother, (qd. Clerimond) it behoveth me to obey you; for I plainly see I must let go the thing I cannot have, for whereas force constraineth, fear hath little power, and necessity often preventeth truth. These discourses finished, Ferragus departed with his Queen and other Attendants, and entring the great Hall, with very much honour & reverence they received the Lady Clerimond, the Queen thus saying unto her: Sister, Welcome, for I have long desired to have a sight of you. Lady (quoth Clerimond) I give you a Million of thanks, but know this, that I am right heavy and sad for two Christian Knights that are come hither, under colour of friendship and love, brought over by my Brothers fair promises, and now to be violently handled, as to be thrown into a Dungeon, and also threatned to death. This Sister, even this, wounds my Soul, and splitteth my very heart in sunder. Alas Sister, pitty me, for one of these Knights should be my Husband, amongst all men living; he is the comliest, valiantest, and hardiest Knight that liveth upon the face of the earth. Again (dear Sister) by force of arms hath he conquered his Foe, and won my love; wherefore, Lady, pitty my distressed estate and let me see that Christian Lady, which you have so long kept within this Castle. Sister (said the Queen) I shall gladly consent to your desire herein; and so bringing them together, the Lady Bellisant said thus unto her: Lady, what is your will with me? speak on, for I would gladly hear any thing you have to say. Then thus, I bring you joyful tydings, and yet the end of my tale will

be

be as ſorrowful, as the beginning is joyful: Know this, that I am not ignorant of your eſtate and dignity; for you are Siſter to Pepin K. of France, & Wife unto the Emperor of Greece, who wrongfully baniſhed you his Country: Soon after your exile you were in your travel delivered of two fair ſons in a Foreſt, one of which was taken from you by a Bare, & the other you loſt you know not how. All this is true. Nay Lady, your Children are both alive, & I can tell you where to find them. At theſe words Belliſant fell into a Swound for joy; Clerimond quickly recovered her again, & then the Lady ſaid unto her: Fair Damoſel, how came all theſe things to your underſtanding? Then Clerimond related the whole ſtory, how Ferragus her Brother by ſubtilty & treaſon had put them into a Dungeon. Belliſant hearing her two Children were impriſoned by Ferragus, made great lamentation, inſomuch that the Wife of Ferragus entred the Hall, to underſtand the cauſe of their mournful clamours; Clerimond told the Queen all, from point to point: Well (ſaid the Q.) be appeaſed, & diſſemble the cauſe from the K. for if he have any knowledge thereof, it will make him rather ſo much the worſe, than better affected, either to them, or you.

CHAP. XXXIV.

How *Pacolet* the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies.

As theſe three Ladies were conſulting about this matter, into the Chamber came Pacolet the Dwarf, that was now come from his Wooden Horſe. When Clerimond ſaw him, ſhe wept bitterly, and ſaid: Alas Pacolet, what injury have I done unto thee, that thou ſhouldeſt thus rob me of all my joys at once, for I am well aſſured that thou mighteſt have given me warning of all theſe miſeries. Lady (qd. Pacolet) be not ſo highly diſpleaſed at me, for I proteſt I am ignorant of all that hath befided you, but ſeeing you have begun theſe bitter bickerings, I ſwear my Art ſhall utterly forſake me, but I will find a remedy for you to avenge your ſelf, and to that purpoſe, I here vow all my ſervice unto you, and Valentine, while life doth laſt. Friend (qd. the Lady Belliſant) if thou canſt but free my two Children out of Priſon, I ſhall acknowledge my ſelf highly indebted to thee, & I will recompence thy labours every way. Lady

(qd.

(qd. Pacolet) no more take you care; but comfort your ſelf, e're long you ſhall well perceive my crafty work to take ſuch effect by my Art, that you ſhall have cauſe to remember me while you have a day to live.

CHAP. XXXV.

How by Art *Pacolet* ſet free *Valentine* and *Orſon* from the Priſon of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines with their Mother, and fair *Clerimond*.

IT chanced that on a day Ferragus made a great Feaſt for all his Nobles, which day they paſſed in ſuch revelling and mirth, that the night growing late, they all betook themſelves to reſt. Being all at reſt, Pacolet was ſtill watchful to give the Ladies content, and coming to a great Tower, whoſe gates were braſs, and ſurely locked by his enchantment the gates flew open, and he entred thereinto, Anon he came unto the door of the Priſon, where the Ladies Two Sons lay bound, and as ſoon as he touched the door, the locks brake, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark dungeon, and hearing the door open, were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but preſent death; and at laſt Valentine began to weep, but Orſon ſaid unto him: Take courage Brother, for it behoveth us to prepare for death: and ſith it is ſo, he that firſt entreth here, to lay hand upon me, ſhall dearly pay for his adventure: with that he laid hold of a great Iron Bar, that lay thereby: But at laſt pacolet ſpake to them, ſaying: Lords, fear me not, for I am come to ſet you free from forth this Dungeon, wherefore make no noiſe, but follow me, and before the morrow Sun, I ſhall bring you both unto your Mother: Valentine at this ſpeech rejoyced greatly, but *Orſon* beholding him with an auſtere look, would not give any credit to his words. Pacolet at the fierce look of Orſon was much aſtonied, inſomuch that he gave back, but by the words of Valentine he was much recomforted, and Orſons fury abated.

After this, Pacolet led them to the Chamber whereas theſe two ſorrowful Ladies ſat in mournful tears. When he came unto the door of the Chamber, it was faſt locked, but he did eaſily open it. After they entred in, Pacolet ſo wrought with his charms, that all that were

were thereabouts fell into a heavy and dead ſleep, and knew nothing of their coming. Being in the Chamber whereas the two heavy Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but ſhe ſuddenly fell into a ſwound, ſpeaking unto them never a word: but the Lady Clerimond piteouſly ſaid thus unto Valentine: Alas (faire Knight) this is the Mother that bare you, who for the love and joy of you, is fallen into this grievous extaſie. Then Valentine embraced her, and took her up in his arms, and Orſon alſo claſped her about the middle, ſaying unto her; Sweet Mother, ſpeak unto me, and then he kiſſed her tender lips, but all this while ſhe ſpake never a word, but at laſt they all three fell flat upon the earth in a ſwound, and there lay panting for breath a long ſeaſon, while the faire Lady Clerimond ſtood over them, bewailing this ſtrange accident: At laſt, coming to themſelves again, the Mother ſaid unto them weeping; Alas my Children, for your ſakes have I ſuffered more pain and anguiſh than ever poor woman was able to undergo, and you two the only cauſe of theſe my doleous paſſions, but ſith the Gods have ſo ordained that I may once ſee you, and embrace you before my death, all my griefs are banquiſhed, and become no burden unto me. But tell me, how have you been preſerved ever ſince your birth, and in what Country, and with whom have you remained? for it would glad me to hear the event thereof. At laſt (ſhe having ended her words) Valentine began the piteous ſtory of all their miſeries, even to that preſent hour. Valentine having finiſhed his ſad tale, by which the Empreſs Beliſant clearly knew that they were both her natural Children, wailing with many more tears than before, ſhe would fain again have fallen into a ſwound, but Pacolet prevented her, who was at that inſtant in the Chamber, ſaying unto her: Lady, leave theſe laments, and let us think how we may depart from Portugal, and ſo rid us out of the ſubjection of K. Ferragus. Alas, ſaid Clerimond, my love, remember the path that you made unto me, to make me your wife. Dear Lady (quoth Valentine) what I have promiſed I will perform but at this preſent the love I owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me near the heart.

Theſe words of Valentine being ended, Orſon ſaid unto Pacolet, Go open me the door of Ferragus, and with theſe hands I ſhall work his final downfal and overthrow. Pacolet anſwered, Come, go along with me, and I ſhall gladly open it, to fulfill this your deſire.

But know this, if you Murther him, you shall lose the love of my Brother the Green Knight, who may divers and sundry ways do us displeasure. (quoth Valentine) you say truth, and I agree unto this your wise and discreet motion; for I would not have you guilty of such a crime, as the death of this your brother, for to gain the whole world.

At this very hour they departed the City, and Pacolet opened the Gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a Ship ready Rigged, and having a fair gust of wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of Clerimond: whether being once come, they refreshed themselves with Pleasures.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the Castle of *Ferragus*, and sailed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*.

VAlentine being come, and safely arrived at the Castle of Clerimond, could not so content himself therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of Ferragus, fearing lest he should follow them, and put them in so fresh dangers. Therefore to prevent all occasions of further mischief, he got him down unto one of the Ports, causing the Marriners there present, to victual their Ship afresh, and also provided good store of Munition to be in readiness upon all occasions. Having thus done, he returned again unto the Castle without any suspition. Being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother Bellisant, and the Lady Clerimond, saying; that he would suddenly depart for Greece, towards Constantinople, to see his Father the Emperor, who without any just cause, had banished his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with Orion and Pacolet.

The next day they took shipping, and went on their voyage, and at break of day, the Jaylor, according to his accustomed manner, went to the Tower to visit the Prisoners, and to bear them their allowance of bread and water. Coming unto the Gates, he found them all open, and the Prisoners gone, he suddenly returned to the King, and said unto him; Dread King, mercy; for this Night I have lost the two Christian Knights that you had delivered to Prison. He had no sooner done speaking, but another Messenger appeared,

and

and said: O King, a greater mischief then this is likewise happned this night, for the Christian Woman whom you have kept so many years, is this night escaped away, and hath carryed along with her your sister Clerimond. Ferragus understanding these hard tydings, all enraged, began to tear his hair, that he was as a Mad-man among his Warrons, and suddenly causing them to be armed, he made them to pursue and follow them; so he betaking him to his Club, issued out the Gate-most.

He was a mighty man, who was in stature about thirteen Foot in height. Being out of the Town, he calling his men about him, went forward to follow them that were escaped, letting none pass hee mee withal; but he demanded tydings of them, yet he could not hear of them, for Pacolet by his Art was too subtile for Ferragus. At last, being tyred with pursuit, he swore that he would besiege the Castle of Clerimond, for he did think assuredly to find her there, but all in vain, for they had been there, but they were departed before his coming. Thus enraged, he swore by Mahomet, that he would either find Clerimond and all her company, or else he would shake all Christendom, and so departed the Castle.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How King *Ferragus* assembled all his Men of War to take Revenge upon *Valentine* and his Sister *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitain*.

When Ferragus had long laboured, and could hear no tydings of the Christians, and his Sister Clerimond, he was grieved, and in his fury sent for all his men of War, on every side, presently to assemble themselves to take Sea, and follow Valentine, to try if they could find him, and bring him back again. But when they had spent many days, and effected nothing, they returned every man to his home, and rested from their fruitless Toyl. While Ferragus and his Forces were thus scowring the flowing Seas, Valentine and Orson were entred the City of Aquitain: being there, they dissembled their Estate, and as Private Persons, Lodged in a House of a Burgess of the Town. Valentine

would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke Savary, but Orson thereunto would not agree; for he having a further reach of policy, said thus unto him: Brother, I find by small experience, that Women are unconstant, therefore hearken to my advice, let us only see and try how the Lady Fezon standeth affected towards me, and herein we shall try her constancy. Brother (quoth Valentine) I shall right willingly agree hereto. Then Orson took upon him the habit of a Knight Errant, and entred the great Hall, taking Pacolet the dwarf for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he saluted him with all reverence. The Duke observing well his behaviour, took it to be Orson that thus had demeaned himself; but after finding by his search he was like to be deceived, he said: Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly adventure to do you service, in any manner you will employ me. Knight (quoth the Duke) I accept your proffered service, and will give you Sallary enough to content you, insomuch that if you will not depart my service before I give leave, I shall give you such riches, as all the Rock you came from could never raise. Thanks great Duke (qd. Orson) for your liberal heart, and I here vow e're I depart, to deserve your love and liberality.

Hereupon the Duke requested him to bide his Court, and in lieu of his good will, he allowed him in present pay, one Hundred and Fifty Pounds, making him withal a Companion for the Court. Orson thus preferred by the Duke, behaved himself worthy of his preferment, and ever so carried him at Meat, that every man delighted in his company. Amongst the rest, the fair Lady Fezon, that was sworn his Wife, grew wondrous heavy and sad, but she knew not why, for she knew not that it was Orson whom she had beheld, and thus passed forth the dinner time. Dinner being done, Orson took his leave for that time, and returned to his lodging, where his Mother and the Lady Clermond had taken up their residence. Orson being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he related to them the whole passage between him and the Duke, which when they heard, they much rejoyced thereat: but this joy lasted not long, for there came sudden News, that Ferragus had sent Messengers to the Duke of Aquitain, to proclaim open Wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome news, presently provided both men and provision, to resist so proud an Enemy. Ferragus hearing of

to his purpose, suddenly accosted before Aquitain, even in the very same place, whereas his Brother the Green Knight had pitched Pavillions, when that Orson became his vanquisher: by this means much hurt redounded unto the Country and Provinces thereabout, whereas the Sarazens Army lay in readiness, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to subdue, and ober-run the whole Country before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this imagination (mark what followed) the worthy Duke of Aquitain, being of a magnanimous courage, assembled all his men of Warr, and being thus put in a readiness, he suddenly issued out of the Town, venturing to raise the Siege. Amongst the rest, Valentine and Orson made their appearance, being also accompanied with little Pacolet, but these three were not known unto any at that time: where we will now leave them a little, to hear what followeth.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken prisoner in the battel by *Ferragus*, and how *Orson* set him free by the help of *Pacolet*.

The Duke of Aquitain coming to mind the huge Army of the Sarazens, that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present battel the next morrow; so calling up all his Forces, and placing them in readiness, there happed a bloody battel before the City of Aquitain, and many a brave Leader on both parts, there lost their lives. The Giant Ferragus himself was amongst the thickest, gathering himself as near as he could unto his Standard bearer. The chief men slain in this battel, were six valiant Knights, that is to say, Baudumain, Bondry, William, Galeran, Anthony the good Marshal, and Gloriam the hardy: all near about the Duke of Aquitain, and they that had the chief command throughout his Camp. This happening, the Christians were forced to fall back, whereby the Duke himself was beset with enemies, so that none might come to succour him; yet in the midst of these dangers, he bare himself most valiant, and still cryed, Aquitain, Aquitain, my Noble hearts fight on for Aquitain: but in the end all little availed, Ferragus having once gotten a sight of him, came near, and at last took him Prisoner, and so run to his Pabilion. Ferragus having thus

bellowed

followed the Duke, came up again to the Battel, which struck such an amazement into the hearts of the Christians, that they would have forsaken the field, especially, because they had lost the Duke, their Lord and Master. Valentine and Orson seeing them thus to waver, came up with all the speed they could, and cryed out unto them with a loud voice: Valiant Knights, and Men of Aquitain, shew your selves Men, run not away in time of extremity, for if you do, lamentable will be your reproach: be joyful and courageous once again, let us try the fortune of the day.

These two Knights having thus done speaking, the people began afresh to gather up their scattered forces, and turned their forces once more upon the Sarazens, with a double courage. By this time tydings was brought into the City that the Duke was taken prisoner, at which ill News the Lady Fezon lamented more than all the rest; saying with a heavy heart, shedding tears: Alas my Father! now is your life in hazard, for from these Sarazens there is no hope of any mercy. Farewel sweet Father (quoth she) I shall never hereafter see you again, but shall be here left as a desolate Orphan. Alas Orson my love, thy long and tedious staying abroad doth much distemper me; for if you were here present, there would be some hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongst the thickest, hewing forth his way with his sword. Orson on the other side was not idle, for he had taken an Oath, that either he would free the Duke from Captivity, or leave his body amongst the rest. Pacolet the Magician and Dwarf, promised Orson aid and assistance at need, and thus all hurled, and nigh hand wearied, Orson put Spurs to his Horse, and ran violently through the Battel, and escaped: Orson and Pacolet being past danger, hurled away their own Shields, and hanging about their necks the shields of the Sarazens, set forth with the Image of Mahomet in them, and by this subtilty they passed quite through the Camp of the Pagans, (for Pacolet could speak their language right well) now are they come unto the Pabillion of Ferragus, where the Duke lay in bands, thinking to have released him; But Pacolet perceiving the number of his Guard to be too mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his Charms, into a deadly sleep; Being thus made fast, he came unto the Duke and said unto him: Come with us, &

plently

presently mount this horse, for we are come to set you free from the power of Ferragus; if you doubt what I am, I am the Knight, which in your Hall demanded Wages of you, and you allowed me liberally. Stand no longer to question me, neither fear the power of all the Pagans here assembled, for I will surely be your guide through the Watched rout. Right (quoth the Duke) you are a welcome man to my distressed hands, and therefore for your dangerous enterprise in working my deliverance, I shall give you my fair Daughter Fezon in Marriage. Indeed (I must confess) I have given her not long since, to a Knight, but he was Wild and Savage, and he never had the use of his tongue, but by reason of his long absence, I fear he hath won some other Lady, and left my Daughter husbandless; but to be short, take her for this the Noble act, and with her I freely give the hold of my Dukedom. Thanks (quoth the Knight) such a gift is not to be refused; but let that pass, and let us make ready for our escape, that we may return unto our discomfited Forces. Having thus said, they all three took their way back again thorow the Camp of the Enemy, without disturbance. All this while was Valentine in the Army, demanding what was become of his Brother Orson, but when he found no man that could tell him tydings of him, he grew wondrous heavy and sad, fearing very much that he had been slain in the conflict of the battel.

Thus passed Valentine from place to place, to find out his brother Orson, and with a resolute mind rushed afresh into the battel, and as a man distracted, he laid so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand against him: Ferragus espying him so Valiant, came up to close him, and having gotten him once in Chase, never left him, until he had slain his Horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his Horse, Ferragus seized on him as his Prisoner, causing him to be bound hand and foot, taking an Oath by Mahomet, that he should not escape from Death, though there were not a man more to be had throughout the whole Land; but this Oath was broken for as he was leading his Prisoner Valentine fast bound along the field, Orson, Pacolet, and the Duke of Aquitain set upon him. Orson crying out, Let him not escape us; and therewithal put spurs to his Horse, and ran so fiercely against the Pagan Ferragus, that both he and Valentine his Prisoner, fell to the earth.

The

the Gyant Ferragus quickly regained his feet, and left Valentine, who fearing, began to run away. Orson espying him, cryed out, Brother, return again, and fear nothing: hereupon Valentine was new mounted: when the Christians saw the Duke again at liberty, their courages increased, their forces doubled, and with joy of heart they cryed out aloud; Long live the Duke of *Aquitain*. This sudden noise much amazed the Sarazens, insomuch that Ferragus was glad to flee, and raise his siege; When the men of Aquitain heard the retreat, they recovered themselves again into the City. The Battel being thus ended, Valentine and Pacolet returned to their lodgings, but Orson went along with the Duke to his Palace, whither being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his Daughter Fezon; being all assembled, he called Orson unto him, demanding of him his Name? Sir, quoth he, I am called Gregory: Then said the Duke thus before them all; Lords, I give you to understand, that above all men living, I am most beholding to this Knight, both for my life and liberty. And as for your Daughter Fezon, it is my pleasure, that above all men, you accept this Knight for your Husband; Daughter, you have good cause to love him well, for by him I am made a living Father unto you.

The Nobles there assembled, agreed willingly hereunto, affirming, that she should do no less than to submit to her fathers Will, and the rather, considering the Dangers that by him had been prevented: Orson hearing all this, still concealed himself till he had further assayed the Constancy of the Lady Fezon; acquainting his Brother Valentine what he purposed to do, as ensueth in this next Chapter.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How *Orson* tryed the Constancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before he Married her.

ORson having a desire to try the Constancy of Fezon, at last replyed thus unto the Duke: Sir, for the honour you have vouchsafed me, I rest ever thankful for the same; but for your Daughter, it were most requisite that I should see how she stands affected towards

wards me, and likewiſe fit for her to make choice of ſuch a man as is of equal birth with hers, and therefore if it pleaſe you, let her anſwer for her ſelf. With theſe words he entred into the Chamber of fair Fezon, and ſitting down by her, he took her by the hand, and ſaid unto her: Lady, your beauty hath ſo enlarged my heart, that without your favour and love, I am an unfortunate man: your Father is willing that I ſhall enjoy you, if you pleaſe ſo alſo, then may I juſtly vaunt, that I have won the faireſt Lady living, and will prove a conſtant Knight whilſt I have breath; if you conſent to this, let us embrace each other. Knight (quoth the Lady) you ought to forbear, for all your labor is loſt: it is true, I love all Knights, yea, all good men too, in the rule of honour, but as for him whom I mean to make my Husband, him will I never change, nor yet forget. Why? but fair Lady (quoth Orſon) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to pleaſe you: Sir (ſaid ſhe) it is reaſon that I obey my Father, but if ſo be that my Father will conſtrain me to break my faith, and forſake him that vanquiſhed the Green Knight, I will rather leave my Father, than once offer to break my faith. Lady (quoth Orſon) I wonder how you can ſet your affections on ſuch a man, for he is of a wild nature and diſpoſition; beſides, as your Father reporteth, is dumb and cannot ſpeak a word: True (quoth the Lady) yet love learneth me to love him with a faithful affection, to whom faith is already fired; and therefore ſtay your Suit, for I will never alter nor change my mind from him.

Orſon hereat grew wondrous joyal, to hear the wiſe Anſwer of Fezon, and took his leave of her, and came again to the Duke, ſaying; Great Duke, I am returned from your daughter, for ſhe hath given me an utter denial, ſaying; that ſhe will never have other Husband than he that conquered the Green Knight. Quoth the Duke, care not for her denial, for ſhe ſhall not rule her own will, but be you a little patient this day, and I will talk with her my ſelf. Thanks mighty Duke (quoth he) I am much beholding unto you, and ſo left the Court, and came to the Lodging of his brother Valentine, to whom he related the whole matter of his proceedings with the Lady Fezon. Brother (ſaid Valentine) you now know and find her faithful, but let us go together to the Palace, for I am aſſured the Duke

will give me good Entertainment. Sir (said Orson) do as you please: Valentine clad himself in rich apparel, and Orson put on nothing but the Jacket in which he first entred into Aquitain; and thus, accompanied with Pacolet, they went towards the Palace; and as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his daughter, in the presence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her: Daughter, what moveth you to neglect my command thus, in rejecting the Knight, of whose love I have made sufficient tryal, for he hath saved my life? Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to solicite me no further in this matter, seeing you know assuredly that I have given my promise to him that banquished the Green Knight: what greater shame can there be, than to break my promise which I have made already? If by you I am constrained, the danger light upon you, only let me be innocent. As they were thus discoursing, the Duke espyed Valentine and Orson coming towards him, whom he embraced and honourably entreated. Orson having saluted the Duke, passed towards the Lady Fezon, who received him with a smiling countenance, and said thus unto him: You are welcome above all others, your long absence hath greatly grieved me, and had you not come now in as you did, my Father had bestowed me upon another Knight. Love (quoth Orson) I have learned to speak since I was with you last, and am the very same Man that yesterday Courted you in your Chamber: all which pleased the Lady exceedingly. So Orson went into a Chamber, and put on rich apparel: being thus attired, he entred the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming, embraced him kindly, and said: Son, pardon my rashness, in that I would have given away thy love to another, for I was fully perswaded that thou wouldest never have returned. Sir (quoth Orson) I forgive you. Then the Duke demanded how, and where they had spent their time, since their departure? Orson told him their whole Progress, and what dangers they escaped, and withal, how they two were the Sons of the Emperor of Constantinople, and Bellisant, Sister to King Pepin of France, whom they had lately found in Portugal. The Duke hearing that their descent was of Royal Blood, was right glad thereat, & said: Knights, you are worthy all honour by reason of your Birth, but I am sorry that your Father the Emperor, and your Uncle King Pepin, are so hardly besieged by the Sarazens, and that unless speedy

aid

aid be ſent unto them, they will be forced to yield themſelves. Valentine giving good ear unto this Relation, grew exceeding ſad, but Pacolet at laſt put him ſomewhat out of his dumps, and ſaid: Leave off your ſorrowing, for e're to morrow night I ſhall ſend you to Conſtantinople; but, quoth Valentine, it muſt be then by the Devils means. Sir, ſaid Pacolet, mount you upon my Wooden Horſe, and try the event that will follow after. Valentine anſwered, that will I do, for I deſire nothing ſo much as the ſight of my Father, whom I never ſaw. Valentine on the morrow prepared for to depart: but before his departure the Duke married his Daughter unto Orſon, in the preſence of the Lady Belliſant, and the Lady Clerimond, with the conſent of his Nobles that were at the Wedding, where there was great Triumphs: and in this Aſſembly there was a Spy, who obſerved all the Proceedings, and gave intelligence thereof unto Ferragus. When Ferragus had received theſe tydings, he vowed by Mahomet to be revenged on them all, but eſpecially on Pacolet, for ſtealing away his Siſter Clerimond, whom he ſo much loved, and had ranked her among the Chriſtians.

CHAP. XL.

How *Ferragus* the Gyant ſtrengthned his Forces by the aid of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimain*.

FErragus being out of hope to get revenge on the two Knights, and his ſiſter Clerimond, called unto him a Meſſenger, and delivered to him divers Letters of State, eſpecially one of them was to King Trompart, of whom he deſired aid againſt his Enemies, all which, if he could ſpeedily accompliſh, he would give unto him for his wife, his ſiſter Clerimond. At the farewell of his Letter, he deſired him to bring along with him the Enchanter Adrimain. Here leave we the Gyant, and return to Valentine, who by this time is taking his leave for Conſtantinople. But in the end, he ſaid thus unto the Duke, and Orſon his Brother: Lords, with you I leave my lovely Clerimond. Valentine (quoth the Duke) take you no thought for her, for I ſhall have a Fatherly eye over her, as well as I have over my Daughter Fezon.

Valentine having taken leave, at last came to Clerimond, who loath to part with him, wept bitterly, whereby he was forced to leave her, and turning him to his brother Orson, said thus; Brother, commend me to my Father the Emperor, and to my Uncle King Pepin, and tell them, e're long I will visit them. Brother (quoth Valentine) I shall remember you, and so departed. Orson still remained in the Palace, but Valentine had a duty yet more to do; namely, to take his leave of his Mother; but when she saw him, she clasped him round with her Arms, but was not able to speak: Valentine perceiving her natural affection, recomforted her in the best manner he could, but all was in vain.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the pittiful Tale the Empress made to *Valentine* her Son, before his farewel into *Constantinople*, and what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.

VAlentine being overcome with the lamentations of his Mother, at last said thus unto her: O Mother, leave off, be not so careful for me, for if I escape danger, I shall gladly see you here again, in the mean space take care of my fair Clerimond, and let her be assured of my loyalty towards her. Alas, my Son, now will it come to light that I have been basely abused, and falsly banished my husbands Bed and Country, but yet do thus much for me, commend me to the Emperor, and also to my brother King Pepin, and say unto them in my behalf, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be such a man breathing, that will but once open his mouth to the contrary, fight thou for me, and justly maintain my unspotted Chastity. Mother (quoth Valentine) all this and more I shall perform, and e're many months have run their course, I shall cause my Father to receive you again, and ask you pardon for his rash proceeding. So now he takes his last farewel of his dear Mother, with this charge, that so soon as they were arrived, he should send Pacolet to bring tydings of all that had happned.

Now taketh he his way to the Lodging of pacolet, whither being come, pacolet made ready his Wooden Horse, and mounting Valentine

Valentine behind him, turned the Pin the same way he would take, and suddenly they were mounted in the Air so swiftly, that e're the morrow at noon, they were in the sight of Constantinople. Valentine was wondrous joyful, that he was so near the place he so much desired to see, and by the help of Pacolet the Enchanter, came that night to the great Hall, where the Emperor accompanied with King Pepin, sat both at Supper. Valentine being come into such an unknown presence, grew very bashful, but the Green Knight sitting at the Table, with the Emperor and King Pepin, espyed Valentine, and knew him, so did King Pepin take knowledge of him likewise, saying thus unto the Emperor; Great Emperor, behold here one of our own blood, a valiant Knight, and your own natural Son. The Emperor hearing this, was much amazed, and rising from the Table, made towards him, and kissed him: The Green Knight was the first that took him in his arms, and embraced him, then King Pepin next, and lastly the Emperor his father, who was greatly ashamed at his foul Fact, in banishing his unspotted and guiltless Wife.

It chanced so likewise, that in this presence was her old servant Blandiman, who well observed Pacolet, ever since he saw him in Portugal; and at last he went unto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Mistris, the Lady Bellysant: Pacolet satisfied him in all his demands, so that exceeding great joy and gladness was heard about the City for the life of Valentine, and people came from all parts to behold the Emperors son, the valiant Knight. Valentine seeing such continual recourse of all estates gathering about him, he said unto them: Lords, Knights, and Barons here assembled, who seem well pleased to behold my person, I cannot yield unto you any other recompence but thanks, and especially unto my Uncle King Pepin, who hath ever fostred me, even from my Cradle; and had it not been for him, I had perished by reason of a sharp edict published by my Father, who, by the false suggestion of a dead Traitor, banished my Mother from his Bed and Country: wherefore to clear her innocency, I (as her natural son) offer my Body in Combat against any false Traytor whatsoever.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

How *Valentine* and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners in the battel of *Constantinople*, by the Souldan *Muradin* & his men.

When the Emperor perceived his Son to be so much moved for the dishonour which was done unto his Mother the Empress, he wept for very grief of heart, and said thus unto his son: Alas my son, I have no doubt of thee to be my son, neither of thy manhood, in offering to revenge her wrongs upon the Traytor that accused her, but he is fallen already by the Sword of a Merchant, in the presence of thy Uncle Pepin, my self, and divers others of high estate. At his death he confessed the whole Treason wrought against her, and since that time I have sent divers and sundry messengers into all Nations, to hear tydings what is become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my desired wish: therefore I pray thee, if thou canst, tell me some glad tydings of her. Father (quoth Valentine) I know somewhat, for yester-night I both saw her, and spake with her in Aquitain; telling him besides, that Pacolet the Enchanter had suddenly brought him thither by Art, rather then good speed. The Emperor hearing such gladsom news from his son, caused great Triumphs throughout the City of Constantinople. When the Sarazens heard such shouts and revelling within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himself in a readiness. The Souldan round begirt Constantinople, famishing up all the Inhabitants most lamentable to behold. At last these tydings came to the Ears of Valentine and the Green Knight, who arming themselves, came into the City, and said: Lords, you well perceive the extremity in which we are in; be yet couragious and stand to it, and there is hopes of recovery, wherefore follow my counsel, issue forth some number of you to forrage for some victuals, while I, accompanied with 2000 men, set upon the *Sarazens*. They did as he advised them, and within short time they behaved themselves so valiantly, that they gained from the Enemy 300 Chariots laden with all sorts of victuals. Having thus seized the victuals, they were conducting the same into the City, but the Souldan sore vexed at his losses, got between the City and them, thinking to have defeated them from

from entrance, but King Pepin espying their policy, and how they had stopped up the passages, presently couched his Spear, and ran upon the Souldan so violently, that he bare the proud Pagan to the earth, then pulling out his Sword at one Archillon, a very valiant Commander, with such fury, that he struck him out of his Saddle. Valentine and the Green Knight perceiving the great courage of King Pepin, and what fortune he had in the field, at that present entred freshly into the Battel, and with a resolute courage, even in the presence of the Souldan, he hewed down the chief Standard of the Sarazens. The Standard being overthrown, Valentine addressed him against the Souldan himself, and with his Spear he so encountred him, that he so foiled him, as he could scarcely sit his horse. Moraldas, one of the chief Commanders was slain, and his Admiral taken prisoner by the Green Knight, with other exploits performed on both parts. But mark what follows, these two Knights were so Triumphant in their

uncertain

uncertain Victory, that they pressed the enemy so far within danger, that when they would return, they could not, and so consequently were taken Prisoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Souldan.

The Souldan having gotten them in Bands, insulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he vowed by his Mahomet, that they should never escape with life, but gave present commandment to raise up a Gibbet before the City Walls, and presently in the sight of all his enemies to hang them up. Now were Valentine and the Green Knight in a great fear, but we will leave them a little, and return to those Christians that had gotten great Booty of victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by reason that they were encountred by the Sarazens Army: in which encounter the Christians were so hard beset, that they were doubtful what should be the end of that days bickering. And at last, they espying what desperate case they stood in, with one consent issued forth, Men, Women, Priests, Clerks, and all degrees. When the Pagans saw their multitudes, they were forced to retire themselves into their Tents, and by that means the Christians obtained all their Prey of Victuals, and safely conveyed it into the City, although with loss of many a life. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the loss of his Warlike men, especially for his Son Valentine and the Green Knight; most heavy and sad also was the worthy King Pepin. Pacolet seeing these two Peers take the matter so heavily, recomforted them again, saying on this manner: Lords, leave off your lamentations, for it shall fare better with Valentine and the Green Knight, than you can imagine. Friend (said the Emperor) if thy words prove true, I will advance thy Estate: Sir (said he) shortly you shall make tryal of my love and respect towards you: so he betook him to his Wooden horse, and departed towards the Souldans Host, and came thither just at the instant that the Souldan came to judge Valentine and the Green Knight to death: and how it was prevented, you shall hear in the Chapter following.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

How *Pacolet* by Enchantment, deliver'd *Valentine* and the Green Knight, out of the bondage of the *Soldan*, and how *Pacolet* conzened the Soldan when he had him upon his horse, and instead of carrying him to *Portugal*, brought him into *Constantinople*, where he was hanged.

ALL being assembled, as aforesaid, the Soldan began thus to speak: Lords, here I present before you these that most incumber the mighty Count Ferragus, and that which most you ought to respect, is, that one of them hath forsaken his Religion, and for that cause my judgement is, that he be sent to Ferragus, and from him receive punishment fitting his Offence: Nay, said the other Sarazens, let us never do so, but let them both here suffer death to morrow morn, Lords, quoth the Soldan, let it be so. These resolutions thus agreed upon, the Soldan enters his Pavillion to supper, where being set, Pacolet came and saluted him in the name of Mahomet: Pacolet (quoth the Soldan) thou art welcome, how fareth Ferragus my dear friend? Sir (said Pacolet) right well, and by me sends glad some tydings, if you please to hear them. Right gladly, said the Soldan, I prithee begin; then Pacolet drew him aside, out of the hearing of his Attendants, and said; Sir, know this, I am lately come out of Portugal, and sent by the fair wife of Ferragus, whose heart is on fire with the love she beareth to you; long hath she concealed these her affections, but having no power longer to keep close the closet of her breast, she hath committed to me her love, her trust, and what she dares not utter to any other but my self. Again, Ferragus is in Aquitain, so that no opportunity would be omitted, therefore come along with me, and stay no longer to expostulate, for upon my horse will we suddenly arrive in Portugal, and bring you to the fair Ladies sight; pacolet, thou hast more gladded my heart, than all the worldly Treasure can afford; true it is, she is the onely Woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to effect my Wishes: The Soldan caused pacolet to be highly feasted, so on the morrow they went on towards their journey, but mark what followed, Valentine and the Green Knight you must conceive, were both in the Pavillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a sight of pacolet, but durst not make any shew thereof;

and Pacolet on the other side shewed himself a flatterer to the Soldan, in eating, drinking, and revelling at the Soldan's Table, and in beholding the Prisoners, said thus unto the Soldan, in hearing of all; Sir, how dare you venture your Noble person so near to this Green Knight, and not rather give him his desert, for of all men living he is most dangerous; first, for the wrongs that he hath committed against his brother Ferragus, bereaving him of Clerimond, and giving her in marriage to a Christian Knight; next he hath renounced his Mahomet: these things considered, it is fit that he should dye, were there no more men living. Friend (quoth the Soldan) to morrow morning they shall both be hanged. Then the Soldan commanded the prisoners to be strongly guarded upon pain of death, and so withdrawing him to his chamber, left Valentine and the Green Knight under the conduct of those that most desired their deaths.

In the dead time of the night came Pacolet unto Valentine, and the Green Knight, and first freed them of their bands, and by art so charmed all their Warders (who slept securely) that he brought them past all danger. Having thus set them at liberty, about the dawning of the day he came to the Soldans Tent, crying out so loud to him, that he awaked him, and then Pacolet began thus to say unto him: Sir, little appeareth your love to the wife of Ferragus, seeing for her sake you are loath to break one hours sleep: whereunto the Soldan replyed, thou hast done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a most fearful dream, and thus it was, Methought a Crow did bear me swiftly through the air, and as she was flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and struck at me with his Bill so hard, that the blood forthwith issued out in abundance; now this dream maketh me much to fear that Ferragus hath some intelligence of my desires, and means to revenge himself upon me. Away Sir (quoth Pacolet) with this childish fear, will you therefore neglect the love of such a beautious Lady: by Mahomet (quoth the Soldan) thou sayest truth, and calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this charge: Sirrah be secret, if my Uncle Bryan ask for me, tell him I am gone a little way to disport with Pacolet. Then Pacolet took the Soldan behind him upon his Wooden Horse, and turning the Pin, the Horse rose up into the Air so swiftly, that in a little space they were come to Constantinople, even in the Emperors Palace:

The

The Soldan perceiving Pacolets house to make a stay, said thus unto him: Friend, are we at our Journeys end? Yea, and fear nothing, for we are now in portugal, in the Palace of King Ferragus. By Mahomet (said the Soldan) the Devil hath born us here very quickly. Well (said pacolet) enter you into the great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean space I will haste into the chamber of the Lady, and presently cause you to be brought unto her Bed. Do so, quoth the Soldan, for I am even well near ravished with joy, and shall think each minute an hour, till I have my desire.

Now sitteth the Soldan in the Hall, attending the coming back of pacolet, while in the mean space, maketh towards the chamber wherein the Emperor lay; being come to the Door, he gave a great blow against it, insomuch that the Chamberlain asked who it was that thus presumed to disturb the Emperors rest? Friend, quoth pacolet, fear not, for I am pacolet, newly come from the Soldan's Host, where I have set at liberty, both Valentine and the Green Knight, who were condemned to dye. Besides, say unto the Emperor, that I have brought along with me the Soldan himself to be in portugal. Wherefore he may now be revenged on him at full, for he hath most justly deserved death. The Chamberlain told the Emperor all these tydings, and King pepin also; so arming themselves, they came into the Hall where the Soldan sat: The Soldan perceiving himself betrayed, cryed out with a loud voice: Thou false pacolet, Traytor to my person, I vow to be revenged upon thee, for thy disloyal practice towards me, and therewithal drew out his Sword, and like a mad-man ran up and down the Hall, striking the very stones so fiercely, that he made the fire to flie from those senseless Walls: As he was in this madding fit, the Attendants entred towards him with Torches. The Soldan espying them, defended himself so fiercely, that he slew the Squire that attended upon King pepin: this Act of his fired the courage of the King, that he made a blow at him, and felled him to the earth. Being fallen, they bound him hand and foot, and in the morning came Valentine and the Green Knight, who finding the Soldan there in bands, were very joyful.

The Emperor and the King seeing Valentine, were joyful for his Deliverance, giving great thanks to pacolet for his care over

his Son, and withal ſaid, Pacolet, one ſtain more of thy houſe muſt I demand; you ſhall Sir (quoth Pacolet) and if you will get behind me, I ſhall inſtantly tranſport you into Hell. But Lords, let that paſs, and return unto the death of the Soldan, for if he eſcape your hands at this time, a world of miſeries will follow: ſo that very hour they proceeded to Judgement, and commanded him to be hanged on the greateſt Tower of the Palace, even in the very ſight of all his Pagan Hoſt.

This done, the Pagans ſtood as men confounded and amazed, to ſee him there hanging, and wondred how he came within the City; but at laſt Bryan his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traytor Pacolet. After they had long lamented the death of the Soldan, they gathered themſelves to counſel, and in his ſtead choſe his Uncle Bryan Soldan. After all theſe things done, Pacolet took his leave of the Emperor, and returned into Aquitain to comfort the Lady Clerimond, as he promiſed: but before his departure, Valentine came unto him, and ſaid: Pacolet, at your coming into Aquitain, ſalute from me my Mother Belliſant, and my loving Lady Clerimond, my brother Orſon, and the good Duke of Aquitain, with the reſt of his Nobles; and above all the reſt, deliver this to my Mother, by which ſhe ſhall underſtand our whole proceedings here. Sir, ſaid Pacolet, all this ſhall I willingly perform: ſo taking his horſe, he leapt upon him, and he flew up into the Air as ſwift as Swan.

The next morning Pacolet was come to his journeys end, and finding the Duke of Aquitain, the Empreſs Belliſant, Orſon, and Clerimond, all in ſafety, he ſaluted them all, and delivered them Letters, who ſaid; Lady, your Son Valentine greeteth you well, ſhewing you, that the Emperor would gladly ſee you, confeſſing his raſh credit given to a Traytor, about your baniſhment, who hath requitted it with the loſs of his life, wherefore he promiſeth, that ſo ſoon as he can free his Country from the Incurſions of the Sarazens, to come himſelf in perſon, and then forthwith bring with him the Green Knight, whom Orſon vanquiſhed. The Lady hearing theſe joyful tydings, ſuddenly fell in a ſwound, but Orſon perceiving it, ſuddenly ſnatched her up into his arms, and being ſomewhat come to her ſelf, ſhe ſaid: My child, I am fully overcome with joy, in that I underſtand I am proved innocent of ſuch abominable crimes, as I

was

was falsly accused of: but I long to see the Emperor, whom if I might but once again behold, I should not longer desire to live, for I am well enough revenged, and my Accuser hath justly satisfied a most shameful Death for his Treachery.

CHAP. XLIV.

How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitain*, to succour *Ferragus*, and brought with him *the main* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*, and how the King of *Inde* caused King *Trompart*'s head to be struck off: and how he would have married with *Clerimond*; and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain* in the shape of a Woman: and how *Ferragus* was slain; and how *Orson* & the *Duke* went with their Army to *Constantinople*, to succour the Emperor: & how *Orson* led along with him his mother, & how all the *Pagans* were slain before *Constant*: and how the Emperor received his Son *Orson*, and his Wife *Bellisant* with joy.

PAcolet being arrived in Aquitain, at that same time that King Trompart came thither to aid Ferragus against the Christians; at whose coming, Ferragus began thus to salute him, famous King, of your coming I am glad, hoping by your assistance to get back my sister Clerimond, and to be revenged on all those that have detained her. Ferragus (said K. Trompart) doubt nothing, for I have brought with me Adrimain the Enchanter, whose skill shall confound Pacolet in his own Art. Thanks gentle King, I am much bound to you for your love, and if he can but get Pacolet into my hands, I shall reward him liberally. Sir (quoth Adrimain) put your trust in me, and so taking his leave, betook him to his Magick Art. Being provided of all things, amongst the rest, he laded himself with victuals, and took his way towards Aquitain; coming thither, he craved entrance of the gates to sell his victuals, which was easily granted. After he had sold all, he went into the Palace; where he chanced on Pacolet, whom Pacolet knew well. Adrimain, quoth Pacolet, you are welcome, from whence come you, and what is your errand? Then said Adrimain, you know that long I served King Trompart, yet

by

by fate I am fallen into a great mischance, for one in his Court having smitten me, because I would not teach him the Principles of my Art, I drew forth my knife and killed him: now fearing death I am expelled the Court, and for this cause I fled towards you for succour, and will prove unto you a faithful servant, so be pleased to accept of me. Adrimain said Pacolet, I am content, let it be so, make thee good Cheer, and be merry. As they were thus in their Cups, Adrimain saw the fair Clerimond pass through the Hall, who presently demanded what Lady it was: Then, said Pacolet, it is the sister of Ferragus, who must be married to a right valiant Knight. Whilst they were thus in conference, came Orson unto them, and said: Gentlemen, I could gladly wish that one of your Art would shew some what to delight the Assembly.

At whose words, Adrimain drew up a Cup above a Pillar, in such wise, that through the Palace (seemingly to all the company) ran a River furnished with all sorts of Fish, little and great: when the Beholders saw the water to come up so strongly against them, they were afraid of drowning. Pacolet beholding this feat, amongst the rest, began a song, and in that song a charm, that it seemed to all the beholders, that a Hart ran through that river, overturning all things that stood in his way. After this hart ran hunters with their hounds. This made many of the beholders leap after, thinking to have taken the Hart: but pacolet by his art, made the Hart suddenly to vanish. This sport, quoth Orson was very well performed; and so the company breaking up, pacolet led Adrimain to his Chamber, to be with him, but proved fatal, for towards midnight, Adrimain so enchanted all within the Court, and with them pacolet, that he had time to work all that he desired. Afterwards he went towards the house of pacolet, and getting him, came into the Chamber of Clerimond, and by Art caused her to rise and make her ready, and setting her on the horse behind him, came unto a window, turned a Pin, and suddenly he arrived in the Tent of King Trompart. Being come thither, he cried out aloud, saying: Great King sleep not, but hasten you hither, and you shall see the pleasant Lady Clerimond, whom I have stolen from Aquitain, and with her pacolets horse. Now said the King, I well perceive thy love: is this the sister of Ferragus? Yea, said Adrimain, and I have stollen her away, and also betrayed pacolet my

fellow

fellow Magician, for he shall never be Master of his horse again: But (said the King) art thou acquainted with the manner of his horse? O long since, worthy King, and by vertue of the Pin, how to govern him. Having thus made this known unto King Trompart, he thought to make experience of the horse himself, and taking Clerimond behind him, would transport her into his own country, and there marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his arms, (for all this while she was not awaked out of her enchanted sleep) and set her on the horse of wood. All this Adrimain was eye-witnes of, and said thus unto him: my Lord, if you fail one jot of the true use of the horse, both your self and the Lady are in very great danger. Fear not that (quoth Trompart) and so turning the Pin, he mounted swiftly into the air, and before the next morning he was two hundred miles on his way, but not at his journeys end, for now awaked the Lady Clerimond out of her enchanted sleep, who seeing her self so deluded, fell suddenly into a swound: this chance struck to the heart of K. Trompart, for he was afraid lest she had been dead, & so turning the Pin, he stoped the horse in a fair green field by a Fountain, then taking the Lady from the horse, he laid her on the grass, and took a little water and cast it on her face, and the Lady recovering, made such grievous lamentations, that K. Trompart was well nigh out of his wits, within this place there was a Shepherd, of whom King Trompart required somewhat to eat, which he gave unto the Lady, who eat thereof, and was refreshed: and at last being come again unto her speech, she weping uttered these words: Unhappy I above all Creatures, for I have lost my joy by accursed Treason. Alas Valentine my Lord, curled be he that hath seperated us. Trompart hearing her so clamorous, reproved her roundly, saying; Lady, leave off these foolish words of the Christian Boy, or else I shall seperate thy head from thy body; is it not better for thee to be my wife, that am sole Lord of all this Juridiction, than to have a beggerly start-up, that hath neither Land nor Living; and with that word he would have killed her, but the Lady disdaining him, fell upon him with her fist upon the Mouth.

This strange and unlook't for disdainfulness, put King Trompart in such an anger, that he in a furious rage caught her up, and set

set her upon the Horse again, and turning the Pin the contrary way, presently, instead of carrying her into his own Country, he lighted in Indie, in the midst of a Market-place, kept there that day: the people seeing such a strange sight, marvelled much thereat. The Lady Clerimond by this time, knew the Horse to be Pacolets, and said: Now am I sadly betrayed, and Pacolet robbed of his Horse, but my dear Valentine, be it is most sticketh at my heart, for now shall I never see thee more. Trompart thought to all this that he had been in his own country, still beating down her piteous laments with bitter words. But mark what followed. Tidings was brought to the King of Indie, of what had happened, who commanded them to be brought before him. But this fell out ill for King Trompart, for the King of Indie knew him well. King Trompart being come before the King of Indie, he bid him welcome, for you are he that put my brother to death: wherefore I will be revenged on thee, and so caused his head to be smitten off. After, the Lady was led into the Kings Palace, where he sat in his own person, and he thus said: Lady, I know now of whence you are, by the bright splendor of your face, it hath enthralled my heart; wherefore if so you please to be my Wife, I will make you Queen of all this spacious Continent. Sir (quoth she) you speak graciously, but to take any man to Husband, I have made a solemn Vow to refrain during the space of one whole year, wherefore pleaseth it you to let my Vow be accomplished, and that time being run out, then will I willingly consent thereto. Well, said the King, thy answer is reasonable, let it be as thou hast said, perform thy vow, and remain within my Palace, and he commanded that her attendants should be as great as if she had been his Queen, allowing her a Chamber of State, into which Chamber she caused to be brought the Wooden Horse that carried her thither, and being there, she placed it in the secretest place she could devise, and still desired she might be kept out of that danger. Now leave we her a while, and return to Pacolet, and look back also to Aquitain, and see the mourning that is made for the Lady Clerimond.

The Night after Adrimain had betrayed Pacolet, great lamentations were made for the fair Clerimond, throughout the City of Aquitain. Moreover, when Pacolet found Adrimain absent, he doubted more, and looking round about the Chamber, wherein the Horse stood,

stood, he suddenly missed it: all this so falling out, Pacolet fell into a most grievous passion, insomuch, as had not Orson at that instant come in, he would have destroyed himself.

Pacolet being thus rescued by Orson, and beholding the general sorrow for the beautious Lady Clerimond, he began thus to comfort them; Lords, I will not give over till I am revenged on that Traitor Adrimain, by whom we are all thus wronged. Herewithal he departed, and apparelled himself like a gallant Maid, and took his way to the Host of Ferragus. Being come among the Army, many Pagans prayed for her love; but evermore Pacolet excused himself, and said: Pardon me, I pray you, for I am promised already to the Enchanter Adrimain, and so they let her pass on. At last Pacolet came to the Tent where Adrimain was; at which Adrimain stood amazed, and was so deeply overcome in love, that that night he retained him into his Chamber; but Pacolet no whit to seek of his wiles, made somewhat squeamish, and said: By God, know this, I have been desired of many, but I think still the worthiest to be first served: Daughter (quoth Adrimain) fear nothing, make good cheer, and be merry, for I have a good stomach to thee, and will use thee well. Now he committed the Maiden to one of his Servants, to be served with all the Dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feasted in the Tent of Adrimain; while Adrimain is in the Tent of Ferragus, Pacolet demanded of the servant of Adrimain, what was become of King Trompart: the servant said, I think he is returned again into his own country, and carried along with him the Lady Clerimond upon a horse of wood that my Master had given him. Pacolet hearing this, was vexed at the heart. By this time was Adrimain come unto his rest, saying to Pacolet; Daughter, is it time to go to rest? See here is the bed we mean to sport in: your will be done, said Pacolet. Then Adrimain put off his Cloaths, and went into the Bed: Pacolet so enchanted him in so strong a sleep, that awake he could not till the morning. As he dealt with Adrimain, so he did with all round about him; and putting off his Womans attire, he clad himself in all the richest Cloaths that Adrimain had; and after, with his own Sword cut off his head, and bare it away with him. Having thus done, he takes his way towards the Tent of Ferragus, the which he found well guarded, and

there by his Art, he alſo caſt them all into a deadly ſleep. This done, he entred the Tent of Ferragus, where he ſuddenly made him leap out of his bed, and cloath him: and tying him in his Girdle, made him run by his ſide like a Spaniel, till he came then to the very entrance of the Gates of Aquitain.

When Pacolet was come to the Gates of the Palace, he found there the Duke himſelf, accompanied with many of his Barons, and eſpying Pacolet, they ſaid unto him; Where is Clermond, that thou bringeſt not her again? he anſwered, Lords be patient a while, I cannot ſhew you all at once: know this, I am fully revenged on Adrimain, for here I have brought his head, and here is Ferragus, who by my Art I have alſo ſurpriſed, as you may ſee. Then ſaid Orſon you have done very well. Nay, Lords, more yet I have to ſay, which is, I have enchanted all the whole Hoſt of Ferragus, therefore if ever you mean to have a ſatisfied Victory, go now. What ſay you? my Lords, quoth Orſon, methinks Pacolet hath well adviſed us, therefore let us go on: ſo they ſlaughtered all that lay before them, and put Ferragus into a moſt filthy, dark, and loathſom Priſon, until their return.

After this great ſlaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into Aquitain, and there commanded to have the Tyrant Ferragus brought before him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted ſleep, unto whom the Duke thus ſaid: Ferragus, if thou will here forſake thy Mahomet, and receive Baptiſm, then thou ſhalt live, which if thou refuſe to do, thou ſhalt ſurely die. Know ſaid Ferragus, I had rather ſuffer a thouſand deaths: ſo he was ſuddenly beheaded. After his death, Orſon took leave of the Duke, and went towards Conſtantinople to aid his father the Grecian Emperor, and his Uncle King Pepin of France, againſt the unbelieving Sarazens, that had ſtrongly beſieged that City; but a little before his departing, the Duke ſaid this unto him: Worthy Knight, ſith you are reſolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you company; Orſon was very joyful to hear him ſay ſo, and gave him thanks, ſo taking ſome ſmall time to ſet things in a readineſs, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and a valiant knight, who brought them on towards their journey. But by the way the Empreſs Bellyſant, much lamented the hard uſage of her Lord: but Orſon pitying her, ſaid: Mother,

leave

leave off your Tears, and only joy, in that you have been falsly accused, which now will much encrease your Honour: But I fear more our entrance into the City, which as I hear, is much troubled with Sarazens. Nay, said Pacolet, fear not that, for I will work a device to enter, and my self will go before and tell them so; Do so, said Orson, and tell Valentine the hard Fortunes of Clerimond: Nay, quoth Pacolet, not I, I will be no bearer of such sad tydings.

Now King Pepin and the Emperor being strongly besieged, were in great distress for Victuals within the City, and there was no way to be relieved but by the Sword. Then Valentine knowing their great necessity, accompanied with the Green Knight, and a worthy Band of Souldiers issued out of Constantinople, and charged upon 200 Chariots of Victuals of the Pagans, and recovered the same, with the death of all those that attended upon them. Having gotten this Booty, they made their return towards Constantinople, thinking to recover the City, but they were beset round about; On the one side with the Soldan, and the other side with the King of Arabia, and thirdly with a King called Affrican. Amongst these Companians fell out a terrible bloody Conflict, but Valentine in single fight killed the King of Drumagen, and the King Clarian. The Green Knight also behaved himself gallantly, for at one blow he struck off the Shield-Arm of the King of Morien, and before that slew his Brother. But all this valour little availed, for in the end they were both taken Prisoners, and led before the Soldan: who having them in his power all, assembled 15 Pagan Knights to adjudge them to Death. Valentine being thus in Bonds, greatly lamented the state of the Lady Clerimond, taking leave both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the rest; saying, I must now forsake you all, and never again behold your faces. The Green Knight seeing him so passionate, said; Let us dye in a good cause, and welcome Death.

Now was the Soldan set in his Chair of State, to proceed to Judgement: in the mean space in comes Pacolet, in the midst of the Throng, not known of any, and came and stood before the Judgment Seat, and kneeling down, said: Right dear Sir, know I am a Messenger from your brother Godart, the great King of Arger, who to your succour hath brought along with him four mighty Kings, and by me requireth on which side of your Army they shall be ranked. A-

gain, he prays you, if you have any Christian Prisoners, to send them him, and he will send them into his own Country to draw the Plow, and here stands a couple of fit instruments for that purpose. The Soldan rejoyced at these tydings, and commanded he should be highly feasted for that night: mean time Valentine and the Green Knight were glad of Pacolets company. In the dead time of the night, Pacolet went unto them, and giving to each of them a Horse, unbound them, and bad them follow him. Being out of the enemies reach, Pacolet said thus unto them: Lords, be comforted, for in this Land is allembled the Duke of Aquitain, and the Knight Orson, the noble Empriels, and the Lady Fezon: I, but said Valentine, why cometh not the fair Clerimond? Then answered Pacolet, she would have come, but being Sea-sick she was forced to return again to Aquitain. So Valentine for that time questioned no further with him.

Then Pacolet advised them all to go into the City of Constantinople, and on the morrow issue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the Enemy. In the mean space I will on the other side so dispose my self, that the Host of the Warlike Duke shall come up, and give a fresh assault. Now the Soldan seeing this, shall imagine it to be his Brother, the King Argier.

Pacolet (said Valentine) thou hast well advised, and so it shall be effected. Thus they departed; Pacolet took his way to the Duke of Aquitain, who was yet on the Sea-shore, telling him that he had been with the Host of the Soldan, and how he had freed Valentine and the Green Knight. Then Orson answered, Pacolet, there is yet one thing more to be done, and that is this, that to morrow in the morning, we assail the Host of the Sarazens on the one side, and they of Constantinople on the other, and so by that means we shall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, shall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draw up his men in order, and so kept themselves that night.

The next morning the Emperor & King pepin diligently brought forth their Men to the fight, and divided their Host into five Battles. The first was delivered to Valentine, the second to the Green Knight, the third to King pepin, the fourth to Millan Daugler, and the fifth to Sampson of Orleance, one that bear in his Banner a Bear of Silver: At the break of day, these powers issued out of the City,

to

to give an assault upon the Enemy: being come into the field, they sounded their instruments, the noise whereof so affrighted the Sarazens, that they ran out of their Tents, crying, an allarum, an allarum. This Battel was extream hot for the Christians that day, yet the enemy had no cause to boast. King Pepin behaved himself so valiantly, and cryed out to his Souldiers, St. Dennis, St. Dennis. Then a Sarazen cryed out to the Soldan to retire, for the safeguard of their lives, for this night have we lost our two Prisoners, and also there is coming against us, a new supply of a great Army. Then the Soldan thought that he had been betrayed, but yet he made forwards, and rouzed up their courage doubly, insomuch that they inforced the Christians to fall back, but little availed their pride; for there came upon them the Duke of Aquitain, with his forces, and assaulted them so fiercely, that they put to the Sword all that did come before them, and thus the Christians Conquered.

When the Battel was ended, and the Christians had recovered up their scattered forces, Valentine and Orson came before the Emperor, doing unto him dutiful reverence. Father, (qd. Valentine) here you may behold my Brother Orson, whom as yet you never knew, then the Emperor Embraced him with tears, and so did the worthy King Pepin also. Fair Son (said the Emperor) you are welcome, for by you my joys are doubled. Then assembled together the Emperor, King Pepin, Valentine, Orson, the Green Knight, Blandiman, and Guidard the Merchant, he that vanquished the False Arch-Priest. All these with great Triumph, set out to visit the Tent of the Noble Empress Bellisant, and the Lady Fezon.

By it is time they are come: when the Emperor saw his Wife Bellisant, he leapt off his Horse and in tears and sighs, not being able to speak, he embraced her; and Valentine and Orson bare them company in their lamentations, so did also many of the rest there assembled. At last words took place, and the Emperor recounted all the hard dealings that had proceeded against the Empress, requiring Pardon for what was past. My Lord (quoth she) since it hath so pleased the Fates to bring me unto your sight, I freely forgive all wrongs, but I long to see the Man that proved my innocency with his Sword. Lo (quoth the Emperor) here is he by whom your honor was preserved. Sir, quoth the Lady, you ought to be rewarded for

your

your Service to the Empire of Greece, and King of France: For which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you yearly a thousand Marks in Gold. Lady, I thank your Bounty, and will attend you during life. Then, said Valentine, Mother I pray tell me some Tidings of Clerimond. Fair Son, Clerimond hath been stollen from Aquitain, and given to King Trompart, that came to the Pagans aid. Valentine hearing this, looht strangely upon Pacolet, thinking that he had deceived him, and would have smitten him, but Pacolet entreated him to be patient, for an Enchanter hath stollen my horse, away, but I am revenged on him by cutting off his head. Valentine understanding these Misfortunes, and that every one was innocent, grew into bitter Passions for his loss.

CHAP. XLV.

How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused *Orson* falsly of Treason, and how the Knife was found in the Kings Bed. And how *Orson* claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the *Dragon*, & how *Valentine* after the conquest of the *Dragon*, caused the K. of *Antioch* and all his Land to be Baptized, and of the lawless love of the Queen *Rosamond*: And how the King of *Antioch* was put to death for renouncing his Mahometry, by King *Brandiffer* his Wifes Father; and how the Emperor of *Greece* and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners by *Brandiffer*.

These Wars thus ended, King Pepin took his leave of the Emperor, and returned into France. Orson would needs go along with his Uncle Pepin, and spend the remainder of his days in his service. The King was content, and said unto him, I will make you high Constable of France; moreover, if it so chance that my young Son Charles should decease before me, I will make you K. of France. I thank you gracious Uncle, and you shall find me faithful, and along with me will I bear the Lady Fezon: the day of taking leave came,

came, and each embraced other with kiſſes and tears: But Valentine could not reſt, for he had loſt his love, wherefore I am reſolved to ſeek my love, for whom I endangered my life, and by my ſword I won her: her I bewail, and her will I recover again if ſhe be alive: but if I find her not, ſhort and woful will be my days; and ſo he called Pacolet to him, and ſaid, Will thou ſerve me, and be my Companion in this unknown Task? Sir, quoth he, willingly, and ready whenſoever you ſhall ſet forward. Then Valentine made all things in a readineſs for his departure, and now hath taken leave and left his Crown and Country, only accompanied with three Attendants. Now leade we him, and ſpeak of K. Pepin, who by this time is ſeated in Paris, and was honourably received: But above all, the valiant Orſon was highly eſteemed, inſomuch that he had given all the command of the Kingdom delivered over unto him. If ought was to be brought before the King, Orſon was the man to be ſued unto.

This Greatneſs of Orſon kindled Haufray and Henry (of whom you have heard before) to the heart, inſomuch that they plotted a means how to take away his life, ſaying, it was much to their indignity, that Orſon ſhould be thus preferred before them, being Sons unto the King: Surely, ſays the one to the other, his Glory cannot long endure, for his own pride will be his overthrow: Ay, but (ſaid Haufray) underſtand me, we have two Nephews, Sons unto our elder Siſter, to wit, Florence and Garnier, theſe are both hardy and fierce, and by them wherein is ſome Plot might be ſet on foot. Again, they are fit Members to execute any Villany, for one is Butler unto the King, the other is Uſher unto his private Chamber: now either of theſe may enter into the Kings Chamber, and murder him in his Bed, and ſuch a deed being done, it will ſurely be laid to Orſons charge, for he only hath the Guard of his Perſon: If this can be effected, Orſon will ſurely be condemned to death, and the Realm wholly light into our hands. In this it is neceſſary to uſe ſecreſie.

Upon this reſolution, they ſent for theſe two Inſtruments of murder, to acquaint them with the Treaſon, and being come, Haufray ſaid unto them: Sirs, I and my Brother have laid a Plot to do us good, and raiſe you to Honour; which thing we chooſe rather to offer unto you, for that you are allied unto us, and therefore we reſpect you before others. Thus it is, you know our Father the King never loved

us,

us, but hath ever advanced strangers, and left us slighly regarded: these things considered, my Brother I, and you two Brothers, descended from our Uncle, determined to put our doting Father to death, and so we may share the Land into our own Government. This thing by us first plotted, were fittest to be executed by one of you, and I think you, Garnier, to be the fittest for it, because you being Usher in the Kings Chamber, you may convey your self behind some Arras, and when the King is Bed, murder him. This being done, when it shall be known that the King is slain, the Fact will be laid upon Orson, for he only hath the charge of his body, and so we shall quickly get him adjudged to death; and as for little Charles, we shall do well enough to make him away. Uncle (said Garnier) doubt not but that I shall undertake this Enterprize. Shortly after, Garnier on a Night, when the King was at Supper, got a Knife, and secretly entred into the Kings Chamber, and hid himself behind the Hangings. When the hour of the Kings going to bed came, he was attended by his Guard and Chamberlain, as the manner was. The King being laid, every man departed, save only Orson, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep: Orson seeing the King asleep, without making noise, left him, and laid himself down upon a Pallat by him.

The dead time of the Night was come, wherein Garnier allayed, (having the Knife ready) this bloody Enterprize: But being come to the Beds side, ready to lift up his Arm to strike the fatal stroak, he though the King would awaken, and so trembling for fear, laid him down by the bed side, and durst not stir: Anon he would adventure again, but being (as before) possest with fear, he put the Knife within the Bed, then he returned to the place from whence he came. Orson all the while slept soundly, misdoubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightful Dream, which was, that one would have robbed his Wife of Honour: Also he thought, that besides a River he saw two Herons that fought with a Hawk, but the Hawk defended her self so valiantly, that he had slain the two Herons, had they not been affisted by a multitude of little Birds, and the Herons likewise had slain the Hawk, but that an Eagle rescued him.

At this Dream Orson awaked, and was much astonied thereat, saying, The Gods preserve my Brother Valentine from Treasons.

By

By this time the day broke, and Orson softly stole out of the Chamber, fearing to awaken the King. When Garnier saw Orson gone, he also followed soon after, and took his way towards the Chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longed to hear the news: Garnier (quoth they) tell us what is done: Lords (said Garnier) I would not do the like again for all the Gold in France, and yet I have not hurt the King, for still as I was lifting up my hand to strike, fear and horrour did affright me, that I durst no more adventure. But I have advised me of another Plot, and have of purpose left the knife in the Kings Bed, and this it is, we will accuse Orson of Treason, and tell the King, there are four Traytors, whereof Orson is the principal. Also they will make away little Charles; and so wholly possess the Crown. To prove this, we will say, that for this purpose Orson hath conveyed a Knife into the Kings Bed, if any demand how we know thereof, we will say, one of us standing at the door, heard all their conference. Garnier (said Haufray) you say well, but if Orson deny it, you and your Brother shall crave Combat against him, say that by such adventure you come by the worse, my Brother and I shall find men enough to rescue you. Thus they resolved, and thus was Treason laid the second time for Orson the innocent. The next day the King being at Dinner, attended by Haufray and Henry, who shewed good countenance to Orson: When Garnier saw his time, he came before the King, saying: Mighty King, your Grace hath bestowed on me many Kingly Favours, wherefore it is my duty to open unto you a Treason which lately I chanced to hear, and to the end you may have a care of your Person, I will bewray unto you the practisers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay hands on Orson first, for he was the principal Traytor; the number in all are four, Orson was the man should kill you in your Bed with a Knife; and that your Majesty may the better credit me, this day as they met together, I was in a certain place, and heard Orson say, the knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your Bed; you if it please you either to go or send, you shall find my words true. Sir (said Florent) my Brother speaketh nothing but truth. The King hearing these words, beheld Orson with many strange countenances, and at last said: False and disloyal man, can such a thought enter into thy breast, as to take away my life, whom

I have more reſpected than my own Children! Leize (quoth Orſon) be not ſo highly carryed away to believe this accuſation, for I proteſt I am clear of any ſuch thought, and ſhall prove envy the Author of all theſe Treaſons. Speak no more (ſaid the King) for if the Knife be found in the Bed, I will crave no further proof. So calling to his Lords, he ſaid: Lords, I was never ſo ſuddenly confounded as at this preſent. Sir (ſaid Aylon Baugler) I know not what to ſay, but I cannot believe that Orſon is guilty of the Treaſon againſt your Majeſty: yea (but ſaid the King) if we find a Knife in the Bed, it is an evident ſign to move me to believe it; I pray let us go make tryal. So the King went himſelf into the Chamber, accompanied with many Witneſſes: and being there, they found the Knife, as Garnier ſaid: Alas, ſaid the King, in whom may I truſt, when my own Kinſman ſeeketh my life? but I vow he ſhall ſuffer a shameful death. With that a valiant Knight, named Simon, came to Orſon, (which loved him well) and ſaid: Alas Sir, flye and ſave your life, for the King hath found the Knife in his Bed, and ſo the King hath vowed your death. Orſon ſaid: I fear nothing. The King entred the Hall where Orſon was, guarded with fifty one Knights, and ſo aſſembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgement.

Orſon being brought before the King and his Lords, he ſaid unto them: Worthy Lords, ſince my words cannot defend me, I require but the cuſtom of your Country, which is, that when a man ſhall be accuſed of Murther or Treaſon, he might crave the Combat againſt his Enemy.

Now for my part, I hold my ſelf innocent, which I will maintain, if by your Counſels you grant me that which of right belongeth to me: and further, to clear my ſelf, Lo here is my Gage, if I be overcome, do with my body as it pleaſeth you. Garnier ſaid: Orſon, I think you had better hold your peace, for the thing being already proved, we have no reaſon to anſwer you in the Field. Ah Traytor! there is nothing yet proved; but that a man that feareth not damnation, and deſireth Honour, ſaith ſo. Upon theſe words the twelve Peers of France cauſed Orſon to be removed out of the place and alſo the Brothers his adverſaries, while in the mean ſpace the reſt diſputed the queſtion. At laſt it was adjudged that Orſons demand was reaſonable,

ſonable, and that he ought to be heard. Then were the Brothers called in again before the King; then Duke Myllon demanded of Garnier, who were confederate with him in the Kings death? Lords (quoth he) I will not betray them for all the wealth in France: Garnier (ſaid the Judge) I give Sentence, that you and your Brother take up Orſons Gage, and fight with him; for ſince you conceal the reſt of theſe Murtherers, it is to be doubted that there is malice in the Plot. Orſon at this Sentence rejoyced, and caſt his Glove down to theſe two Traytors, ſaying: Lords, here is my Glove that I call down to theſe two Traytors, upon this condition, that if my cauſe be ſoul, or by them conquered, I offer my body to your will and pleaſure: Riſe then, ſaid the King, for judgment is paſt: and for your further ſecurity, it were good we had ſome Hoſtage: With that Haufray and Henry offered themſelves body for body, for Garnier and his Brother: and for Orſon ſtood Myllon Daugler, and Duke Sampſon. Six months day was aſſigned for the Combat.

The time being come that they ſhould fight, Duke Myllon Daugler, Sampſon, Galeram, and Garvaies, brought forth Orſon, for he was well beloved: when he was armed and well mounted, he rode through the City, nobly accompanied, towards the place appointed. Long had he not been there, but Haufray and Henry entred the field with their two Nephews, Royally armed. Garnier and Florent the two Traytors, greatly feared Orſon, but Haufray and Henry ſtill comforted them, promiſing them aid: Being thus in a readineſs, the Biſhop of Paris went unto them, and gave unto them all three an Oath, according to the Law of Arms, and then the Biſhop departed away. After came the Heraulds and the Serjeants of the field, to clear the place. Now Haufray had provided good men hard by, and given them command, that as ſoon as they heard him blow his Horn, they ſhould ſet forwards towards him. This gladded the Traytors at the heart, but it little availed them; for as ſoon as the Trumpets gave Signal, Orſon couched his Spear, and putting his Spurs to his Horſe, ran upon them with fury, and ſent Garnier ſuch a ſtroak, that he ran through both Shield and Armour: Florent on the other ſide, gave Orſon a blow, that he thought he had ſtruck againſt a Tower: falſe and accurſed Traytor (quoth Orſon) thou haſt wrongfully accuſed me, e're this day paſs, I ſhall ſhew thee where Loyalty doth

reſt: and with theſe words, he with his Sword ſmote Garnier out of his Saddle, and withal pulled off his Helm, and had cut off his head, if his Brother Florent had not reſcued him.

Again, Orſon made towards Garnier, and ſtriking off his ear, ſaid: Fair Maſter, I would be loath you ſhould loſe by the bargain. He began a freſh Combat between theſe three Champions, Garnier having recovered again his Helm, came upon Orſon with all his force, thinking to have left ſome mark of that Encounter, but had not his Brother relieved him, he had ſoon been ſlain. Thus Orſon had enough to do with theſe two, for they were of ſtout Courage, and beſide, they relied much upon reſcue from Haufray and Henry, but ſtill Orſon followed, and at laſt ſo wounded Garnier, that he was fain to forſake his Horſe. Being on the ground, he ſmote at Orſon's Horſe, inſomuch that he cut off one of his legs, and felled him to the earth, but Orſon being light and ſtrong, leapt from off his back, and being on the ground, he came and took Garnier between his Arms ſo ſtrongly, that he took away his Shield, and threw him on the earth, but as he would have wounded him in the belly, Florent came upon Orſon, and gave ſuch a ſtroak on the Helm, that he made him ſtagger: Orſon vexed hereat, ſmote him ſo, that he overthrew his Horſe dead to the earth, and after took off his Helm. Florent was ſo aſhamed hereat, that he ran up and down the Field, covering his head with his Shield, and Orſon took pleaſure in chaſing of him: ſtay Florent (ſaid his Brother) flie not, return, or we ſhall be vanquiſhed, and herewithal they made a freſh Encounter upon Orſon, and with their Swords laid on ſo luſtily, that the ſtroaks entred his Armor, and drew blood: Orſon feeling himſelf wounded, ſmote off one of Florent's Arms: but yet he gave not over. Orſon eſpying him making a blow at him, made as if he would have ſtruck at Garnier, but ſuddenly withdrawing his arm, hit Florent in ſuch wiſe, that he fell down dead to the earth; and after ſaid unto Garnier, Traytor, thou ſhalt after, except thou confeſs the Treaſon. Not ſo, Orſon, for I will be revenged on thee for my Brothers death: Haufray and Henry diſliked the match, and ſaid, one of our Nephews is ſlain, and if he overcome the other, he will cauſe him to confeſs the Treaſon, and thereby bring us in danger. Brother (ſaid Haufray) I will tell you what may be done; as ſoon as we perceive Garnier to be overcome,

before

before he confeſs any thing, we will enter the Field, and make as if we come to chear up Orſon, and we will cut off our Nephews head, and ſo the Treaſon ſhall not be known. Quoth Henry, be it ſo. Now are both the Champions at it in the Field. Garnier (ſaid Orſon) you ſee you cannot eſcape my hands, therefore confeſs the Treaſon, and I will ſave your life. Boy (quoth Garnier) thy fair Promiſes are little worth, for ſeeing that I have loſt an Ear, I little reſpect any place of Honour; ſo rather chuſing to dye valiantly, or conquer thee, I ſet down my reſt, that here I will finiſh my fortunes, either to conquer or be conquered. Agreed (quoth Orſon) and ſith death is ſo welcome to thee, defend thy ſelf, for this ſhall be the longeſt day of thy life: and thus he makes at Garnier, and by ſtrength of arms threw him under him, and pulled off his Helm. Haufray ſeeing there was no way but one, cryed out, Orſon ſlay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accuſed you, and we will do ſuch Juſtice upon him, as to ſo foul an Act appertaineth: and Haufray ſaid unto Garnier, Nephew confeſs the Fact, and we will be a means unto the King for your pardon. Lord, ſaid Garnier, I did put the knife into the Kings bed: in ſpeaking theſe words, Haufray drew out his ſword, running him thorow; and after ſaid, Lords, let this Traitor be hanged on the Gallows, as he hath well deſerved: but Couſin Orſon, I am glad of your Victory, for it proveth you innocent: and though Garnier were my Nephew, yet I will never acknowledge him of my blood. News coming to the Lady Fezon, ſhe was glad of Orſons Victory; King Pepin alſo came, ſaying, Nephew, you have endured dangerous wounds. Uncle, quoth Orſon, the Traitors are vanquiſhed, and Haufray made Garnier to confeſs the Treaſon, and ſo killed him. Nephew, beware of that Haufray, for he hath ſurely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace. The King and the Barons returned into the City of Paris, and made great joy for the Victory: Haufray and Henry ſpake well of him, but in their hearts they imagined miſchief, which after came to light, and they had their deſert: where we leave them, and return to Valentine, who rode from place to place to find out Clerimond. Valentine having travelled long, at laſt arrived in the City of Antioch, thinking to find Clerimond; Pacolet being with him could ſpeak their languare, & took up their lodging in a great mans houſe, but the Hoſt of the houſe was ſomewhat

doubtful,

doubtful, and when they were in the Chamber, he would hearken, insomuch that at last he understood they were Christians, whereupon he went to the King of Antioch, and said: Sir, there are four Christians in my House, that have entred your Land without paying of Tribute. The King said, Thou hast well done, let them be brought before me; so being sent for, he said unto Valentine: Christian, I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must take choice of, or else suffer death. What is it (quoth Valentine) for I will do any thing to save my life. The King said, you must either renounce your Christian Faith, or else fight with a dreadful Dragon that hath devoured many men: she is bigger then a Horse, winged like a Fowl, feathered like a Gryffon, the Head of a Serpent, a great sting within her mouth, a fierce look, the Skin covered with red Scales, and she hath the feet of a Lyon. Quoth Valentine, this is some hideous Monster, yet will I try my fortune against her, if you will but grant me one request, which is, that if I conquer this Dragon, you will then change your Mahometry, and become Christians: the King bound it with an Oath that he would, for there were never any yet returned alive that attempted it. Sir (quoth Valentine) let me have a bout or two with this Monster. Then he caused a Shield to be made, and thereon fastened a great number of long Spikes of Steel, a foot long, as sharp as Needles.

This Shield being made, Valentine put on Armor, and buckling on his Helm, girded his Sword to his side, took leave of his men, and mounting his Horse, issued out of the City. Being gone, every one got up into their Windows to behold the Fight. Now they of the City were fain to provide for the Dragon either the Carkeals of a Man or of a Beast, which if they failed of, none durst venture out of the City: but having eaten her prey, she would return unto her Den again, without doing any harm. All such Malefactors as any way had deserved death, were continually thrown unto this fearful Monster; but if they had no Malefactors, then they went to the Seaside, for to take up Christians, if they happened to come on shore, and they were brought to be devoured of the Dragon.

Now by this time is Valentine within the sight of the Dragon; she seeing one come towards her, closed her Wings most fiercely, casting out of her mouth smoak like fire. Then he defended from his horse,

horſe, and left his sharp axe at his Saddle-Bow, and went toward the Serpent, thinking to have smiten her, but she lifted up her paw to smite Valentine, who subtilly watching his opportunity, lifted up his Shield armed as you have heard with Pikes, and so the Serpent broached her foot upon them, who feeling her self hurt, she cryed out most horribly, drawing back, and recoiling. Valentine pursued, but when the Serpent see him approach, she rose on her feet, and thought to have beaten down Valentine with her fore feet under her, but fearing the Shield, she ran back. The King beholding this, said, see yonder is a most valiant Knight, whom we ought to reverence for his hardiness. Also, the fair Queen Rozamond fell in love with Valentine to see him so adventrous.

Now grew the battel fierce and dangerous between Valentine and the Dragon, but still she fearing the pricks of the Shield, by which he held her play; in the one hand he bare his Shield, and the other his sword, wherewith he gave the serpent a marvellous blow under the ear, but with the blow he broke his Sword. Valentine was in great danger when his sword was broken, for the beast grew so angry

thar

that with her paw she rent his Armor quite through. Valentine still pursued her, and drew forth a Knife, and struck it in her Throat, but she little regarded it: Valentine seeing all this do nothing, ran and fetched the Axe at his Saddle-bow, and returning unto her, subtilly waiting his advantage, gave the Serpent such a blow with his Axe, that he cut off most part of her Tail, whereat she roared most hideously. After this she flew at Valentines head, and pulling off his Helm, smote him to the ground, but he quickly getting up, was half amazed at his head uncovered: Pacolet perceiving his Master in distress, got into the City, and put himself in arms, got another helm, and bare it to his Master; Valentine perceiving him, said: Friend, I am well nigh spent, go thy ways, and commend me to my Friends, for if thou stay here, thou must dye with me. But for all this, Pacolet came to Valentine, and delivered the helm: the Serpent seeing that, came to Pacolet, and taking him by the right Leg, pulled him down under her, giving him a push with her paw, that he felt it through his Armor, and had slain him, had not Valentine with his Axe cut off her Nose, and put out one of her eyes: these hurts made the Beast mad, and opening her Wing, she flew to the top of a high Rock: Then went Valentine to his Helm, thinking to have put it on again, but suddenly the Beast came flying down, and he was fain to cover his head with his Shield, which the Dragon espying, returned again to the Rock. Then Pacolet put on Valentines Helm, and said: Sir, I am sore wounded, and must of necessity return to the City, to get some relief, for my health faileth: so they took leave. As soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she assayled Valentine, and flying directly at his head, thought to have laid hold thereon, but Valentine threw his Axe so right, that he cut off one of her Wings, whereby she could not flye. The Dragon being down, Valentine quickly smote off the other Wing; so that the Battle was most violent between them, insomuch that he was not able to lift up his arm any longer to wield his Axe, but leaving all, he got up into a Tree to rest his wearied Limbs, and the Beast not able any more to flye, beheld him with a cruel countenance, casting out of her mouth nothing but stinking vapours. Valentine being well refreshed, came down, and went towards the Dragon, that ran fiercely at him: Valentine still put the Shield before him, and with his Axe cut her

left

left Thigh, wherewithal he fell to the earth. Valentine ſtill purſued his ſtroaks, and ran his Axe ſo far in her Throat, that ſhe fell down dead. Valentine having thus overcome the Dragon, the King called unto him, and ſaid; Of all Knights thou art the moſt hardy, for by thy Valour is our City delivered of a fearful Enemy, that hath much damaged us: With theſe words they entred the City, and ſo to the Palace, where a ſolemn Feaſt was held. Then the King cauſed Valentine's Wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewiſe highly honoured him, for ſhe was enamoured on him ſo dotly, that for to gain his Love, ſhe would have wrought the Death of the King her Husband.

Valentine having well refreſhed himſelf, and healed his Wounds within the City of Antioch, he ſaid unto the King; Sir, you remember your promiſe, that you and your people would receive Baptiſm if I overcame the Dragon; you ſee ſhe is ſlain by me only. True (quoth the King) and look what I promiſed, I will perform: and thereupon ſent this preſent Edict throughout the Land, That every one ſhould forſake Mahomet, and be Baptized. The Queen ſent for Valentine to her Chamber, who preſently went to her, and ſaid; Lady, I am come at your command, and ready to do you ſervice. Ah! ſaid the Lady, thou art of great hardineſs, Wiſdom, Strength, and all Beatitudes belonging to a famous Warrior; happy is the Lady that ſhall enjoy thy Love: O that I were not a Woman, or a Woman not under Subjection, O! I could love thee beyond humane Reaſon, hadſt thou but ſo much liberty as to embrace me, or to grant me love. Lady, I thank you, but you have wedded a puiſſant King, and him only ought you to love and honour. Knight, 'tis true, I have been ever conſtant to him, but ſince I firſt beheld thee, all my thoughts were captivated. Valentine ſeeing the Queen ſo eager, replyed, Lady, if the King ſhould but know or ſuſpect me, I ſhould ſurely be put to Death. Again, he is old, you are young, reſt your ſelf content till I return from my intended Journey to the Holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be dead, I willingly give my ſelf unto you. Hereupon ſhe played the part of many Women that are weary of their Husbands for the love of others; even ſo began this Queen to practiſe, for one night as the Queen was going to bed, a cup of Wine was brought unto her (as the cuſtom was) wherein ſhe had conveyed

poyson, and after presented it unto the King: but he having some doubt thereof, disliked it, saying; Lady, look what Drink you have brewed, either drink it your self, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady being in this perplexity, knew not what to say, but falling on her knees, craved pardon, and said, that Valentine procured her to do it. I do believe thee, quoth the King, and pardon thee: so they lay together that Night; but she still requested that Valentine might be put to death: he shall as sure as I live, quoth the King. She hearing the King say so, was very sorrowful, and secretly calling to one of her Maidens, sent to Valentine to tell him her Will, and what the King had decreed against him: Valentine hearing of this Accusation whereof he was innocent, said; What will not a Woman undertake? Now for the love of the Queen must I depart like a Traytor, or else lay her shame open to the World; well, I will rather depart with dishonour to my self than her. And therewithal calling up his Attendants, before the morning he departed the City, and came to the Sea side, where lay a Ship full of Passengers, ready to put off; in amongst the rest goes he and his company; so hoising Sails, they departed. On the morrow when the King was up, he caused all his Nobles to be assembled, and said unto them; Lords, I am most deceived in the man whom I most trusted, and he whom in heart I held dearest, hath betrayed me, Valentine I mean, who for to gain the lawless love of my Queen, hath stirred her up to poyson me; therefore let us proceed to judge him to some shameful death.

Amongst the rest, an aged wise Baron said; We have no reason to proceed against an Offender, without calling him to answer. Again, were he never so great an Offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon Valentine was sent for, but instead of Valentine came his Host, who told them Valentine was gone before the break of the day from his house, but whether he knew not. The King hearing this, suddenly sent forth men to follow and pursue him, but all in vain, for he was past their reach on the Sea.

Shortly after that the King of Antioch was converted, his wifes Father Brandiffer, a Turk, had so great a Spleen against the King, for altering his Religion, that he sent to him for his daughter Rozamond. When the King heard this unjust demand, he gainsaid him, hereupon Brandiffer came upon him with 100000 Pagans, and besieged

besieged his City. At last within the compass of four Months, by Treason he obtained it, took the King Prisoner, and suddenly put him to death, and Crowned himself King of Antioch. This done, he returned into his Realm, but as he was on the Seas, by a Tempest he was forced into the Land of Greece, into a little City called Cretophe.

Within this City by chance was the Emperor of Greece newly arrived then, and he and the Green Knight, with some other Company rid forth to sport themselves, not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the hands of Brandiffers Souldiers, and having gotten them, hasted towards the Gates of the City, thinking to have seized the whole City, but they found it manfully defended.

The Men of Cretophe were very sorrowful for the loss of the Emperor and the Green Knight. At last they determined to send Letters unto Bellisant of what had hapned, and to demand aid against these Pagans. The Lady receiving these Letters, was wondrous sad, and sending for their Captains and Men of War, made preparation for a speedy revenge. Also she sent for her Son Orson, and craved aid of her Brother King Pepin. Being thus in readiness, they were sent to the succour of the Emperor: but Brandiffer had Scouts abroad to give him notice of all that hapned, and fearing the force of the Greeks, and their Prisoners loss, they stole to the Sea-side, & taking Ship, they in short time arrived at Lize, in which place they took a Castle, wherein was kept his two Daughters, Rozamond and Galazy, who for her Beauty had been demanded of fourteen Kings: Brandiffer had yet no meaning to marry her, wherefore he caused her to be kept within this Castle, for it was the strongest in the Land; for it had a Bridge made by such cunning Art, that but one could pass at a time: At the end of this Bridge two fierce Lyons stood to keep the entry into this Castle: The Lady Galazy was kept in a Dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperor and the Green Knight, with other Christians, which had been there a long time, were put. Where leave we them, and we shall shew you somewhat of the Lady Clerimond, which still remained in Inde.

CHAP. XLVI.

How *Clarimond* after the year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of *Inde*: And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon the King of *Inde*; and how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy* wedded *Rosamond* the fair daughter of *Brandiffer*; and how *Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breathe out Defiance; and of the answer he brought from the *Indian* King: and how *Rosamond* found a way to be taken and led unto the *Indian* King; and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, and sent *Valentine* into *Angery* against King *Pepin*, and how King *Pepin* took the City of *Angery*.

YOU have heard already of the death of King Trompart, who stole away the Lady Clerimond upon Pacolet's Horse: also how she got pardon for one whole year before she would marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appeareth no succour for her relief, which she had so long expected therefore (poor Lady) now is she put to her shifts, and to save her Maiden-head, she feigned her self sick. This news came to the Kings Ear, that the fair Clerimond was extream sick, at which he grew very sad, and came to visit her, at last he would have put his hand upon her head, to have held it, but she refusing, took his arm, and lift up her head her self, making signs that she would bite him, at which action he wondred, and grew much astonished thereat.

After this she rowled her eyes up and down, and made grievous faces, in such wise, that the King got him out of the Chamber, fearing least she should prove mad. In this manner she abode a long time, and she did act the matter so well, that within fifteen days she seemed more like a beast than a woman: she made all her Attendants forsake her, for if she caught them, she would leave some mark behind her; so they left her alone, giving her meat at the window, for none would come near her. One while she put her Smock uppermost, anon she bedawbed her face with Sear, and in this estate the King came and beheld her, lamenting her distemper, and said unto her; Lady, now is the time come that I should have had you to Wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady understanding him well, made shew as if she would beat him,

him, but then she fell into a strange fit of madness: one while she would run against the Chimney, another while fall into a great laughter, then sit down and make faces, and all to preserve her Chastity. Many ways was tryed for her recovery, yet none prevailed: so leave we her in her Chamber, and return to Valentine, who with an ardent desire is robed abroad, accompanied with Pacolet, to find out the Lady Clerimond. Long have they travelled to find out the Lady Clerimond, and now were they arrived in Esclardy, which was the Kingdom of Trompart, who carried away the Lady on Pacolets Horse. Being in the City, they asked for King Trompart, so they told him he was slain by the King of Inde, and that now at this present, Lucar his Son would revenge his death upon the King of Inde, and to that end he had newly mustered up his powers, and waged many Royal Kings to undertake this War. Then spake Pacolet, who well understood the language, saying; Of what account is this King Lucar? for the Host where he lay told him, that he should shortly marry with the daughter of Brandiffer, that was late Wife to the King of Antioch, who was slain by Brandiffer, for that he forsook his Religion.

At this Tale Valentine was much abashed, and wondred at this sudden alteration, but at last he said; Know ye that what is become of the Lady that King Trompart did bring with him? Of her we hear no tydings (quoth the Host:) tell me then were is King Lucar at this present, I would fain serve under him for wages, for my money is fallen short, and I have a great desire to follow the wars. Marry, said the Host, King Lucar is in Esclardy, and there you shall find him accompanied with a huge Hoast, attendeth Brandiffer to receive his daughter in Wedlock. Valentine knowing all this, he hoped to hear of Clerimond; and so he departed, and came to Esclardy, to serve King Lucar.

Lucar being in the City of Esclardy, thither came Brandiffer with his daughter, at sight of whom King Lucar was joyful, but the Lady was sad, for of all other she could never affect him. The Lady was led into the Hall, and there married unto King Lucar. Valentine was abroad, and entring a Wood, he heard the crying voice of a Woman, whom a Sarazen would have ravished: Valentine still heard the cry, and said unto Pacolet: Ride faster, for this cry is more and more in my ear, and we shall do a Charitable deed, in relieving the oppressed

oppressed. Sir, said Pacolet, meddle not in this matter, for you know not what danger you may be drawn into.

Pacolet, thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the name of a Knight, that will not aid in time of necessity: so he rode up and down the Wood, till at last he lighted on a Sarazen, that had gotten a Lady under him. Then Valentine said: My Friend, forsake your Lady, and betake you to your Arms, to Combat with me, for you may well perceive she loveth you not. By Mahomet, quoth the Pagan, I accept of this thy Challenge, and will make thee know, that in an evil hour thou camest hither. These words past, he left the Lady, and mounted his Horse, and then took his Shield and Spear, and being prepared, they set one at the other so fiercely, that Valentine ran his Spear quite through the body of the Pagan, insomuch as he fell down dead. Then went Valentine to the Maiden, saying: Damosel, now is your enemy laid in the dust, but I pray shew me the cause why this man brought you into this Wood: Sir, I will tell nothing save the truth, So it was, that yester-night late he came unto my Fathers house to lodge, and there attempting the use of my body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the Chamber of my Father and there slew him. Afterward he thought he should surely have got his will on me, in this manner as you see, from which by your Manhood I am freed, and mine honour saved; do with me what pleaseth you, for your body hath ransomed mine, and besides, as you have won me, I yield me to your pleasure.

Damosel, by me thou shalt receive no wrong, return unto your house, and keep well your Chastity. So Valentine left the Maiden, and took his way towards Esclardy. This slain Pagan had certain attendents which were gone to seek him, and as soon as they found him dead, they told his misfortune to the King, saying: our Master, and your Marshal lies slain in the Wood. The King was hereat right heavy, and presently sent out a search, to see if they could find the Murtherer. At last Valentine and his company were taken, bound, and beaten by the Kings Commandment. Now in this Castle was Rozamond, who knew Valentine, and was very sorrowful for him, and anon she went unto the King, and said: Alas Sir, do this Kt. no harm, for I vow he is the valiantest Knight liveing, he is called Valentine of France, that slew the mighty Dragon before the City of Antioch;

Antioch; make much of him, and retain him into your ſervice, for his fellow lives not in the World. Lady (ſaid the King) divers times have I heard much talk of his prowels, and I have much deſired to have a ſight of him. Then he called Valentine unto him, and ſaid: Knight, fear not death, but know that above all men, I love and hold you dear, you and all yours I receive into my pay: yet one thing ſtill remaineth, that you muſt do for me, which is: That you go into Inde, and defie the King thereof in my Name, telling him: that I am ready prepared to abenge the death of my Father, whom he hath ſhamefully put to death, except he come preſently before me with a Cord about his Neck ready to receive ſuch Sentence as by me and my Barons ſhall be impoſed upon him: if he deny it, tell him I will ſhortly diſt him and his Land with War, and not leave one Town or Village unranſaked, nor ſpare the life of any. Sir (ſaid Valentine) all this I ſhall gladly do, although I know it to be a dangerous adventure.

The Queen Rozamond ſeeing Valentine ready to depart, entred into her Chamber, and by one of her Damoſels ſent for him; when he came to her, he ſaluted her with great reverence, and ſhe ſaid to him: Knight, you are welcome, for I had a great deſire to ſee you. So had I Lady (quoth Valentine) as great a deſire to ſee you: for ſince I ſaw you, I underſtand your Husband is dead, and that you are newly married again. Lady, you know that for the love of you within Antioch I ſuſtained much danger of life: 'Tis true (ſaid the Lady) and I acknowledge my ſelf guilty, and it grew only out of love to you. But now hath my Father beſtowed me to King Lucar, who is rich above meaſure, yet can I not fancy him, he is a perfidious Traitor, and ſince you entred this Palace, he grew ſo jealous of you, that he ſends you into Inde, truſting you ſhall never return, for never yet come any back again alive: But I will circumvent him, and ſet you free from danger. Therefore know this, that not long ago the King of Inde requeſted me for his Wife, and the truth is, I loved him better then this Traitor, but my Father croſſed me in it: now this King of Inde in token of Love, ſent me a Ring, which hitherto I have kept, and not ſhewed to any, ſave your ſelf; but ſeeing I perceive the malice of Lucar towards you, I will give you that which ſhall defend you from Danger, and make you return a Victorious Knight;

Knight; and though I am assured you have no need of my love, in that you have promised it to another Lady, yet I cannot forget my heart, which for your love lies enthralled. Therefore when you come before the King of Inde, this shall you do.

After reverence made, and salutations from King Lucar, next greet him from me, as my Love and secret Friend, and tell him, that though my Father hath given me unto King Lucar, yet his love cannot once slip out of my breast, but still hath assurance, and full hope one day to meet with him again, when as we may enjoy our wished pleasures: tell him also, that when King Lucar bringeth his Hoast, I will come with him, and then if there be any valour in him, he may carry me away whither he will. Now to the end he shall not find your words to be in vain, bear him this Ring. Lady (quoth Valentine) for your care, love, and good will towards me, I humbly thank you, and have no doubt, but that I shall deliver your message so effectually to the King of Inde, that you shall shortly receive answer thereof. So taking his leave, he went to King Lucar, who allowed him ten Mariners to conduct him over an arm of the Sea, that lieth between Esclardy and Inde, so that having a prosperous wind, the next morning they arrived at a Port two miles from the Palace of the King of Inde. Then Valentine being arrived, he drew forth his Horse out of the Ship and backed him, and said unto the Mariners: Abide here till my return, for it shall not be long e're I be dispatched. One of the Mariners said unto the rest: If thou return, the Devil must bring thee, for of fiery Messengers, not one returned again. Valentine overheard this muttering speech, but made no answer; so he took his way to the City: And when he was near the Palace he alighted off his Horse, and went to the King, who was in his Hall, richly adorned, accompanied with three Kings. As he came up the Hall, the King saluted him with a wrinkled brow, and thought he was a Messenger of King Lucar, and thereof said aloud unto him: Art thou not a Servant of King Lucars? Sir (said Valentine) I am, and bring you such tidings as will fret your heart; but on the other side, I bring such gladsome news, that your very soul will leap to hear it, from the fair Rozamond. Messenger, know this, that in the spight of King Lucar thou should'st have suffered death, but for the love and reverence I owe unto that Lady, thou shalt receive no injury, if so it be, that

thou

thou canst shew me some Token from her. Yes, said Valentine, that I shall shew you, and deliver my Message with such applause, that I will not swerve from the truth thereof. That I belong to King Lucar, you know, who by me sendeth these words, That for the death of his Father, you must come and yield to his mercy, with a Rope about your Neck, as a man guilty of so foul a Deed, to receive Sentence of Death according to your Desert; if you refuse it (as a Messenger) I breath Defiance against you, and tell you that he will shortly come and lay waste your Land, and ransack your Dominions.

Messenger, I understand thee, and set light by these his bold threats: and for answer to this matter, thou shalt have Letters wherein shall be explained how little we regard his Menaces, and also how ready I am to receive his Forces that shall come to whip my Land: therefore leave you these proud brags, and return to that thou hast to say, concerning the fair Lady Rozamond, for I most of all desire to hear from her. Sir (said Valentine) on her behalf I salute you as her Love, and she sendeth you word, that she is against her will married to King Lucar, whom she never loved. Again, the poor Lady is so burdened with love towards you, that if she might have her will, you should soon perceive, that none should enjoy her but you, if you be so content.

Now to come yet somewhat nearer, she told me, that she will come hither in the company of the King her Husband, when he taketh up Arms to invade you, and then may you find other means to accomplish your desire even as you would: By Mahomet, says the Indian King, this pleaseth me extreamly. Sir (said Valentine) whether these come from a true heart or no, I cannot tell, but for token that all is true that I have said, receive here the Ring which you gave unto her, and though Women prove variable, yet methinks she speaks to you from her inward breast. Friend (quoth he) this is the same Ring indeed, and my heart is overcome with joy, go thy ways in, and take thy repast, while in the mean time I get the Letters ready, thou shalt take with thee to answer this Defiance.

Valentine went in as the King commanded, and was highly feasted, and he still demanded after Clerimond, but could not hear of her. By this time came the King, and delivered unto him the Letters, and Valentine taking his leave of him, knew not that his Love was in the Court, who abode many evil days for the love of him, and still

desired to hear some news of him. In the end he shall find her, but he must suffer many Tribulations and hard Atchievements, as you may afterwards hear more at large.

Valentine made great haste to be freed out of Inde, and taking Horse, he came to the Haven where the Marriners staid; at his coming they were amazed, and thought that he had done his Message: Masters (quoth Valentine) fear nothing, for I have accomplished my Message, and I am safely returned. Then the Marriners said, we much marvel thereat.

At these words he took Ship, and on the Morrow they were in Esclardy. Valentine made no stay, but as soon as he had descended his Horse, he went to the Pallace of the King, finding him there accompanied with King Brandiffer, and fourteen other Kings that were come to the succour of King Lucar, against the Indian King: At the return of Valentine they wondred, for the King sent him of purpose never to return, wherefore he made Valentine come before them all, to tell what Tydings of his Message. Valentine began thus to say, He regards not all your Threats a straw; he is fierce and proud, and says, if you have a mind to come to him, he hath a greater desire to receive you, than you have to come; and that you may know that I deliver nothing save the Truth, here is a Letter sealed with his own hand, in which you shall understand his mind more at large. This Letter being broken open, they found Valentines words to be true. King Brandiffer understanding his Answer, Swore by all the Gods, that he would never return home again but with Victory, or loss of Life.

The next Morrow they betook them to the Seas, with an Hoast of 200000 Sarazens. So the King carried Rozamond along with him, and they were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their Tents in a pleasant Field before the City, whilst they of the City made fast the Gates. The King himself got up into a high Tower to behold their order, so by the River-side he might espy their rich Pavillions, gallantly furnished with Arms and Streamers; then the King called unto him certain Heralds of Arms, to know by those Arms, whose Tents they were. The first (quoth they) is Brandiffers, the second is Lucars, and the third is Rozamonds with her Ladies. When the King understood that Rozamond was there, his heart leapt for joy,

and

and said, It is no time to sleep now, he that will have the love of a fair Lady, must venture Life and Goods, or else he is not worthy of her, that will take no pains. Hereupon resolving, he presently put his men in Battel array, and suddenly issued out of the City upon his Enemies, so that they were not in a readiness, for they little thought the Indian had been so fierce, but Love made him do it.

When the King saw Brandiffer ordering his Men in Battel array, he left his Companies, and with much diligence rode towards the Pavillion of the Ladies: Now when Rozamond beheld it was he, she gave all the rest of her company the slip, and ran violently into his Arms, who joyfully received her. The Indian perceiving her good will, got her up behind him, and putting Spurs to his Horse, she said, My love is fixed only on you, and for your love have I long mourned, for I never hated Man so much as I did King Lucar; but now I pray thee, let me bid him farewel, and I will keep my self only to thee so long as I live: Lady, quoth the Indian, doubt not, for I will not fail you, and here I vow, e're three days pass, you shall be Queen of Inde, and Mistris of all my Lands. These words passed as he was riding away with the Lady Rozamond. At last the Guard of the Maidens came out of the Pavillion, and ran to the King, saying, My Lord, there is evil Tydings, for this day you have lost your fair Lady Rozamond, for the King of Inde your utter Enemy, hath stolen her hence, and is ridden away with her, wherefore quickly send your Men of War and follow him, that they may save the honour of your Queen. Hold your peace, said Lucar, and talk no more, for he that hath an evil Wife, it is well if he can be so rid of her, although he had a heavy heart. After this he went to King Brandiffer, and said, Sir, I have small joy of your daughter, who hath left me, to run away with a Stranger, and one that is mine Enemy, leaving me in reproach and shame. Faith Son (said Brandiffer) be not discontent at me, for to day I will be revenged on him that carried her away. So putting spurs to his horse, rid after him, gathering a great company of men. Amongst the rest, Valentine was one, willing to shew his fidelity, who said unto Pacolet, now shew me by thy Art somewhat. Then Pacolet raised such a Charm which so astonied the Indians Eye-sight, that it seemed to him there was nothing before his Horse, but Woods Bushes, and great Rivers. At this he was amazed, that he

made the Lady alight; when the Queen was on the ground, she thought she should have had means to save her life with the King, but Valentine was so near her, that he said unto her; Lady, abide, for you must go with me, for that you have a long time promised me your love. Ah, Valentine, I owe you but little love, for once I made love unto you, and you refused me, wherefore I was forced to seek another, but seeing I am trolled thus, I yield my self as your Vassal, so you will make my peace with Lucar.

Lady (said Valentine) I will do my endeavour; so he led her to King Lucar, and said unto him; Sir, here is the Lady Rozamond your Wife, whom the Indian Traytor had led away against her will, for which she was right sorrowful: Sir (quoth the Lady) he telleth you true, for ever as the Battel was begun, I saw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons that had come to succour me, and without any further enquiry, mounted on his horse: being on horseback, I perceived that then I was betrayed, so I struggled and pulled him by the hair, and scratched him by the face, and forcing him to let me go, I have by the help of this good Knight escaped. Lady (said Lucar) you have well done; and at this present we have no leasure to enquire further hereof: so he left the Lady, and returned to the Battel. They of Inde returned into the City, who had lost divers valiant Leaders, but none so fretted the Indian at the heart, as did the loss of Rozamond. Alas, Lady (said he) I have failed thee in thy greatest extreamity, but I was surely Enchanted, and on the sudden methought I saw Woods, Fields, and Rivers, for she was no sooner down upon the ground, but all was plain and even way before me. Valentine had great praise for getting again the Lady, and she shewed him a fair Countenance, in that he had succoured her, but it was all feigned, for she hated him to death, and putting up this mischance, she watched her time, and in the end accomplished her desire, and brought her Will to Execution.

It is a common saying, Women seldom want Deceit, as here it appeareth in Rozamond, for some four years after, she rode forth of her Tent, pretending to take the Air, but took her way toward the King of Inde, and had given him intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he saw her out of danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his Prisoner, and carry her away. The King did accord-

ing

ing to her direction: so suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her Horse by the head, and carried her into the City.

Hereupon began a cry throughout the Host of King Lucar, that Rozamond was surprized, and she was past recovery. This maddred Lucar at the heart, and gave out, that whosoever would recover her out of his hands, should be made a great Seneshal: Sir (said Pacolet) if you please to atchieve dignity, I will go work, that we will fetch her back? Nay, said Valentine, let her go, once I regained her, thinking that she would have been constant unto her Husband, but all was in vain. The same day that the King had her, he lay with her, and begat a Son called Rabestre, who afterward had the possession of Jerusalem. Lucar was right sorrowful for the loss of his Wife, but Brandiffer his Father recomforted him, saying; Son, take courage, and let us now be revenged before we depart; but it fell out otherwise, for that day came a Messenger to him, who brought him contrary tydings; which was, that King Pepin of France, and the Emperor of Greece, was entred his Land, burning and spoiling many places, and were now upon the siege of Angory, in which City his Lady now lay in Child-bed: therefore you must presently take a course to restrain the fury of the enemy, or else endure such wrack as were lamentable to behold.

Brandiffer hereat amazed, went unto his Son Lucar, and said, Son, here is evil tydings befallen, the French are entred my Land, wasting and destroying all things, therefore I must leave you, to look after mine own: but let me tell you what you shall do; send some Knight unto the Indian, to demand your Wife, upon this condition, that you will first forget the death of your Father, and that you will raise your siege and be gone. Wherefore he sent Valentine unto the King of Inde, to declare this Message. He being come before him, said, Great King, I am come from King Lucar, who says, that if you will restore his Wife back again, he will forget his Fathers death, and will raise up his siege and be gone. To whom the Indian thus replyed: If he will have a Wife, he must go seek another, for she shall never again enjoy her: Valentine having thus received this answer, he departed, and came to King Lucar, telling him all that the Indian had said, which grieved him to the very heart.

Lucar having by this means called Brandiffer to lay with him,

fayre

sent Valentine and Murgalant to raise the siege which King Pepin had laid against Angory. And as they were under sail, Valentine espying a glistering Tower, asked what it might be. Then the Marriners described the manner and fashion of it to him. Now they were come within the sight of King Pepins Tents, and Murgalant having viewed the Christians forces, found the number to be great: then said Valentine, Let us secretly send to the City, to acquaint them with our coming, that to morrow morning they may issue out at that side, and we will back them on this side, that none may escape our hands. Pacolet standing by, said, Let me be the Messenger, for I can speak their Language. Quoth Murgalant, go thy way; So Pacolet departed, but (he said to himself) by to morrow night you will sing another song. Pacolet being come to the very gates of the City of Angory, the warders thought him to be some Spy, wherefore they demanded of him, saying, Whither goes this Fellow? he looks as if he were some Spy: 'tis true (quoth Pacolet) but I come not for your hurt; therefore bring me into the Coast of King Pepin, that I may speak with my Lord Orson, for I have a matter of great import to acquaint him withal. So they brought him into the presence of Orson, who espying him, was right joyous, and said, How fares my Brother Valentine? Then Pacolet told him of all his adventures that he had passed since they saw one another; and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent, and how he could hear no tydings of Clerimond, and told him that they were now come to bear Arms against them, accompanied with 10000 Pagans, under the conduct of Valentine and Murgalant, and to chase you out of these confines, by the command of King Lucar and King Brandiffer, but if you will be ruled by me, I will send the Pagans short home. Quoth Orson, do as thou hast said, and win immortal praise to thy Posterity: Sir, said Pacolet, I am bound in all duty to your Brother Valentine: but the service that I shall now undertake, will highly please you; first, stand you still upon your guard, and in the night put all your men in readiness, and for that Valentine shall not be suspected to be in the Plot, he shall continue in his Tent, whilst I cast a strong sleep on the Sarazens, and then may you come upon them and slay every man. It is good, said Orson, so Orson led him to King Pepin to make him acquainted with the enterprize, and Pacolet was royally entertained for

that

that time: now Pacolet, to the end there ſhould grow no miſtruſt, gave certain ſigns to Murgalant. Being in the City he found out the Admiral Burnas, and ſaluted him with great Reverence, and delivered unto him the Meſſage which he had brought from Murgalant, which was, that of Brandiffers part were new arrived, 100000, and Murgalant ſends you word by me, that to morrow betimes you have your men in a readineſs, to aſſail the Chriſtians on the other ſide of the City, and Murgalant will aſſail them on the other, thereby to hem them up, that not a Man of them eſcape. The Admiral was glad to hear theſe tydings, but he knew not how this ſhould come to paſs; Pacolet took his leave of him, and returned back again unto Murgalant with ſalutations from the Admiral: ſo Murgalant gave him great thanks for his meſſage, and Pacolet departed ſecretly to ſpeak with Valentine. When he was come, he ſaid thus unto him; Your Brother Orſon and your Uncle King Pepin, greet you well by me, to whom I have related the whole manner of your coming, becauſe I would have them well and ready prepared; but Pacolet would not let him know the Plot he had in hand, for he durſt not reveal any Treaſon unto Valentine. The night is come, wherein this bloody Stratagem is to be acted, ſo Valentine commanded the Watch to be ſtrongly ſet, and would be in the Watch himſelf, but Pacolet found a way to prevent him, and cauſed him to abide in the Tent. In the dead time of the night Pacolet went amongſt the Pagans, and caſt ſuch a Charm, that they fell aſleep. This opportunity was not let ſlip by King Pepin, for he with his Army entred the Hoaſt with 60000 fighting-men, and ſet fire amongſt the Tents and Pavilions, and killed all that reſiſted: At laſt they came to the Tent of Murgalant, who lay aſleep in his Bed, and being ſuddenly affrighted, ſkipped out, and one received his body on a Dart, and ſo he fell down dead.

This aſſault being given on the Sarazens, Pacolet ſaid unto Valentine, ſeek to ſave your ſelf, for the Chriſtians have killed the watch, and entred the Hoaſt. Pacolet (ſaid Valentine) thou haſt made me break my promiſe with Brandiffer, for which I ſhall ſurely dye. Fear not, quoth Pacolet, for he ſhall do no harm. The morrow after, Burnas iſſued out of Angory, and ſet upon Pepins Hoaſt, who knew not what had happened. The Battel grew both fierce and long: At laſt the

the Admiral couched his Spear, and running against a Knight of Bay, struck him stark dead, after that, with his Sword he slew Gyrald of Paris: then came he against Robert of Normandy, and lopt off his Leg. At last King Pepin met with him and couching his Spear, he ran him quite through: The Pagans seeing their Admiral dead, retired into the City, the Christians following them, but they defended themselves so valiantly with shot, that the Christians were fain to forsake the Walls: but by some other Stratagems they won the City, putting all the Sarazens to the Sword: within this City was great Riches, which was divided among the Souldiers.

CHAP. XLVII.

How *Valentine* returned back to *India*, after the Battel, and bare with him the dead body of King *Murgalant*, and how he heard tydings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the *Indian* King, and left *Brandiffer* in Prison. And how King *Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indian*, to be drawn to death at horses Tails, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his Hoast, and went to *Angory*, and of the Vision of King *Pepin*, and how he went into the Holy-Land with the twelve Peers of *France*, and what happened. And how *Haufray* and *Henry* betrayed their Father King *Pepin*, and the Twelve Peers of *France*. And how *Caliph* of *Bendas* made Truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar*, and *Brandiffer*: and *Haufray*, to further his Treason, came before *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, and how he was trappaned in his own Net.

The City being taken by the Christians, Valentine finding the body of Murgalant in the field, caused it to be put up, and covered with black. After certain days sail, they arrived where Lucar and Brandiffer were, and in mourning manner brought it before the two Kings, as they sat playing at Chess. As soon as King Lucar saw Valentine, he said: Knight, welcome home, how fareth and speedeth our Forces, have you put all the Christians to the worst, and taken Pepin and his Nephew Orson? Alas, said Valentine, it is fallen out contrary, for we have lost the field, and all our men are slain. For King Farin that had the whole charge of the Watch, let his men slæp, and so the Christians came and made great havock of our Army. As

soon

ſoon as I got any tydings hereof, I awaked my men, hoping to ſave them, but it was too late. In this battel was ſlain your Uncle Murgalant, whoſe body I have here brought. This ſpectacle kretted Brandiffer at the heart, that in madneſs he threw away the Cheſs-board, & ſaid, ſurely Valentine thou wert the cauſe of this. Nd. Valentine, I return him the lye that ſays ſo, & I will maintain my innocency with my ſword. Nay (ſaid K. Lucar) if he had plotted any treaſon he would never have come again, then Brandiffer commanded the body to be royally interred. This news gladded the Indian & hereupon gathering up all his forces, he iſſued forth of the City. The battel being begun, Valentine threw himſelf into the thickeſt, ſo that none durſt ſtand before him. At laſt, meeting the Indian K. he ſmote him off his horſe: Pacolet ſeeing him down, Valentine and he led him unto the Tent of King Brandiffer: when tidings came that the Indian K. was taken, he called unto his men, ſaying: Follow hard and the day is our own: ſo they entred the battel, and drave the Indians to a retreat. When Brandiffer ſaw they withdrew themſelves, they followed them to the gates, where fell on both ſides a great ſlaughter. The battel laſted ſo long that it was night, & Brandiffer & Lucar betook them to their Tents, and bad that the Indian K. ſhould be brought before them. When King Lucar ſaw him, he ſaid unto him: Traitor, the end of thy life is now at hand. The Indian made ſhift to underſtand him, but ſaid neber a word.

King Lucar had no ſooner ended his rough ſpeech to the Indian K. but there arrived a Meſſenger, who ſaid unto Brandiffer: I bring you ſad tidings, O King! for Pepin King of France hath taken your City of Angory, and put unto the ſword, Man, Woman, and Child. Theſe are ill tidings indeed (quoth Brandiffer) but ſeeing we have the King of Inde in ſubjection, I hope ſhortly to free mine own Countrey. Then he ſaid unto King Lucar, Son, we have the King of Inde in hold, let us make ſhort work with him and to morrow morning let him be hanged up: which being done, we will ſpeed unto Angory againſt the French, and take vengeance for theſe wrongs done unto me. Alſo, I have there in a ſtrong Caſtle, the Emperor of Greece and the Green Knight, Priſoners; who at my coming ſhall ſuffer death. Valentine being preſent, was glad to hear of his Father, ſo by a ſign he acquainted Pacolet, that he ſhould very ſhortly ſtand in need of his Art, who inwardly vowed that

he would find some means to release them out of Prison. Also, the Indian King looked wittily on Valentine, and said thus to himself, Cursed be that hour that thou escapedst my hands, for had I put thee unto death, these dangers had never befallen me: Then King Lucar called a strong Guard of armed Sarazens, and said unto them, keep well this Traitor, and to morrow he shall be Hanged. So they took him and brought him into one of the Pavillions, and bound him about the middle to a Post, and so left him, falling to play again. Now Valentine called Pacolet unto him, saying; I am half in doubt whether Brandiffer have my Father in hold, for if I were assured thereof, I would not have indangered my body as I have done in his service: but now is the time to be revenged. Sir (qd. Pacolet) you have small reason to bear him good will, therefore (if so you please) I will find a way to free the Indian King, and to deliver Brandiffer into his hands, so may your uncle Pepin hold Angory still. This (qd. Valentine) would be worthy of thanks, wherefore prosecute thy plot, that so I may help mine Uncle, & deliver my Father: Pacolet having an eye to what he would do, after Supper came among those hundred that had the charge of the Indian King. After they had made a fire without the Pavillion, Pacolet cast them all into a dead sleep. Having so done, he went to the Indian King, and said: Noble King, be glad in me, for I am Mahomet, and am come to set thee free. Then go thou to thy Pallace, and bear along with thee Brandiffer, who shall not know whether he goeth. Alas (said the Indian to Pacolet) taking him for Mahomet) it should seem that I have deserved well at thy hands, when thou tookest so much pains to come down and deliver me from death and mine enemies. King (said Pacolet) trust in me, and believe the Counsel of thy Wife. Herewith Pacolet led him towards Brandiffer, casting all the Watch to fall into a dead sleep, and so Enchanted him, that he arose, made him ready, and went along with the Indian King into his Pallace.

The Indian being thus set free, gave thanks to Mahomet for his delivery: then Pacolet brought him a Horse, made him mount, and set Brandiffer behind him, and sent them packing for India, & so took his leave. At last the Indian came to the Gates of his own City, & calling the Porter was instantly let in: when Rozamond beheld him, she said: Sir, you are right welcome home, but tell me how you came by my Father, that you have brought him with you, is there a Peace con-

cluded?

cluded? No (quoth the King) Mahomet delivered him into my hands, and freed me from death. So by this time ended the bigour of the Charm, & Brandiffer awaking, began to ſay: how came I hither? ſome Devil hath Enchanted me: nay, ſaid the King, Mahomet hath brought us hither, that you may be at Peace with me: I had rather die, therefore ſet me free, that I may go to my Boaſt again. Not ſo, for ſince you are here, I mean to keep you. Now the Sarazens that Guarded the Indian, lay ſtill aſleep. At the break of day Lucar came to the Pavillion where the Indian lay, but when the Pagans ſaw him, they cry for mercy, for they had loſt their Priſoner. Marlets, quoth Lucar, your lives ſhall pay for it, ſo he cauſed them to be drawn along the ſtreets at horſes tails, & after hanged, whereat Pacolet laughed, but Valentine ſaid: friend, I ſhall never be at eaſe till I have found out my Father, whom Brandiffer keepeth in priſon. Here Valentine & Pacolet leave the Pagans, and after travel, to hear tydings of the Lady Clerimond.

You have heard before, how King Pepin took Angory, ſo now will I make plain to you the manner of a Treaſon toward him by Haufray and Henry, it happened as the King was in his bed in Angory, he had a dream to this effect: he thought that he beheld a Wals-prieſt, ſhewing unto him divers Relicks, beſides a ſumptuous Sepulchre, and three times this Apparition troubled him: the Morning being now come, he called before him all his Barons, & declared unto them the manner of this Dream, & ſaid unto them: Lords, I know not what may befal, but I think it ſome Deluſion, or elſe it may be that I ſhould go viſit the Holy places without the City of Jeruſalem. Then ſpake Orſon, I will go with you if you pleaſe, & I alſo, quoth Myllon Daugler: after the Twelve Peers offered themſelves unto him, to aſſiſt him in his Pilgrimage. The King hearing them ſo forward, gave them thanks, and calling before him Haufray & Henry, he ſaid unto them: Haufray you know you are my Natural Son, but yet in ſuch time was you gotten when I had not one foot of Land in France, therefore it is my will that you enjoy this Land of Angory, therefore keep it valiantly.

Then Haufray ſaid to Henry, Brother, you underſtand the K. our Father well, do you not? he will prefer us to ſtrange Lands, as if we were not worthy to be his Sons: now as for his young Son Charles, he provideth to leave him King of France, & we muſt be content with a Forraign part; therefore be ruled by me, & Pepin ſhall never return

into France to establish his Heir. We will work a plot to deliver him into the hands of the Pagans, and then shall we be King of France, and Emperor of Rome, all which I thirst after. Brother (qd. Henry) your words are well put together, but how shall this thing be accomplished: Haufray said, I shall tell thee how: Go unto King Brandiffer, and tell him that I must have his daughter Galazy, and being with him, tell him that King Pepin and the twelve Peers of France, do determine to go to the Holy Sepulchre, & they may be easily surprized, for they take along with them but a few in train. Brother, this will do well, wherefore make haste to India, there shall you find Lucar and Brandiffer: when you have found them, acquaint them with the plot, and I will go along with them. So, so, qd. Haufray, for I shall never be at quiet till this business be finished. Thus had they plotted treason against their Father, who had now entred the Seas, thinking to accomplish their Pilgrimage. Henry going along with them; and Haufray hath likewise taken his way toward India. So leave we them and return to other matters.

The Caliph of Bendas, being come into the Host of Brandiffer and Lucar, treated a truce for a month between them and the King of Inde: so appointing a day to meet thereupon. the Caliph began thus to say: Lords, it is known unto you, that the Christians have won the Realm of Angory, wherefore I wonder that you continue here, maintaining a needless War, and suffer the enemy to grow upon you, in a place of such import: therefore list a while to what I shall declare: True it is that the King of Inde slew your father Trompart, for that he killed his Uncle: this was one for another. Therefore let the Indian deliver Brandiffer, and as for Rozamond, let her be brought and set between the two Kings, Lucar and the Indian: and if she will stay with the Indian, let her; if she will go with Lucar, let him receive her. This his counsel was generally accepted, & Rozamond was brought forth, whereupon the Caliph propounded the matter for which she was called. Rozamond having heard what was said, she resolved to keep her to the Indian King, and Lucar departed away very sorrowful.

The same day that the Caliph made this confession, Haufray came unto the Host of Lucar & Brandiffer, and making haste to their Pavillions, he saluted them, unto whom Brandiffer said: What wind hath driven you hither? Sir, said Haufray, that I have to deliver, craveth secrete & attention. So they drew from their attendants, & then Haufray said,

ſaid, Lords, you know that I am Son to Pepin of France, and I alſo underſtand that you (ſpeaking to Brandiffer) having a beautiful daughter, now if it pleaſe you to give me your Daughter in marriage, I will deliver into your hands my Father, and all the Peers of France, that have ſo much damnified you; for know, that in the habit of Pilgrims, they have taken their Journey to viſit the Holy Sepulchre at Jeruſalem, ſlenderly accompanied. Quoth Brandiffer, for theſe tydings I will give thee my Daughter Galazy, but it muſt be upon condition, that you renounce your Faith; yes, qd. Haufray, that ſhall I do. When King Brandiffer ſaw the Treachery of Haufray, firſt that he would betray his Father, next forſake his Religion, he withdrew himſelf to adviſe with *Lucar* and the Caliph, ſaying to them; You ſee the Treaſons of this man that demandeth my daughter, how dare I truſt him that ſeeketh the death of his Father, and Ruine of the whole State of France: no, I will not make my peace with ſuch an Homicide, I had rather ſee my daughters death, than give her to a vile Traytor. After theſe words, he called to Haufray, and ſaid, Sir, I am glad of your coming, & this ſhall be your taſk, you ſhall go to my daughter, and bear this Letter from me, there paſs away your time till we have further leaſure to reſolve on your buſineſs. Sir, ſaid Haufray, I am ready to accompliſh your demand. So he delivered him the Letter, and a 100 men to conduct him on his way: after they were at Sea, within few days they came within the ſight of the ſtrong Caſtle where Galazy was; when they were come into the Gate of the Caſtle, the Porter called unto them, ſaying, my Lords you may not enter without ſome certain token. Porter, ſaid Haufray, tell the Lady that we ſhall ſatisfie her: the Porter went unto the Lady, and ſaid, Lady, without the Gate ſtand a company of men that fain would enter, and as I think they are come from your Father. The Lady bad her Gentleman Uſher, go know what they would, and whence they were, who did as ſhe commanded: as ſoon as ſhe underſtood he came from her Father B. Brandiffer, ſhe bound up the Lions, and opened the Gate, ſo Haufray entred, and thought all this had been for his good, but it fell out contrary, for he by treaſon was intrapped. Being entred the Caſtle, he was brought before the Lady Galazy, whoſe Beauty eben amazed him, ſo that he was not able to ſpeak one word. After ſome ſpace of time, he ſaluted the Lady, and ſaid unto her; Fair Soveraign, know,

that

that for the great renown that I have heard of your admirable beauty, I have left my Country, and passed the Seas, to acquaint your Father with that which shall make him happy; and for that you shall find me speak nothing but truth, loe, here is a Letter sent by me from your Father. The Lady taking the Letter, read it, when she had read it, she beheld Haufray, saying; Vassal, I have read thy Letter, and I find thee a Christian, and that thou hast sold the life of thy Father, and the twelve Peers of France; all this my Father certifieth by his Letter unto me, and commandeth me that I determine what shall be done unto thee. Now for that I understand thee to be a most perfidious Traytor, I swear by the Law I profess, I will neither take pity nor mercy upon such a wretch as thou art; so she called unto her Officers, and committed him to Prison in a dark Dungeon. Haufray seeing what had happened, said; It is a bitter Marriage to me, instead of having my Person, you shall be Master of my Prison; and so he was conveyed away forth of her presence. Now in the same Dungeon lay the Emperor of Greece, and the Green Knight, & when they heard they should have another Fellow-prisoner, the Emperor so soon as he came in, demanded of him from whence he was? Haufray said, it is no matter of whence, but I am that unhappy Haufray, Bastard-son of K. Pepin; why, qd. the Emperor, I am the Emperor of Greece, can you tell me how it fareth with my Brother K. Pepin and my 2 sons, with the residue of the Peers of France? Sir, said Haufray, they are in this Country of Angory, and have won the same in Battel. So leave we them in Prison, and return to Valentine and Pacolet.

CHAP. XLVII.

How *Valentine* and *Pacolet* came before the Castle, and how *Pacolet* raised up the Devil, to ask his counsel about the taking of the Castle: and how *Brandiffer* brought the twelve Peers of *France* into his strong Castle, and imprisoned them: and how he besieged the City of *Angory*. And how *Brandiffer* having knowledge that *Lucar* was Captive in *Angory*, made means to *Valentine* to deliver him upon sufficient Ransom.

After many days sail, these two arrived at the Castle, and viewing it strangely thought it impregnable; at last Pacolet said, Sir, anon I will tell you more: so he went aside and cast a Figure, & incontinently

ly there appeared unto him a Devil, who ſaid unto him: Leave off your Enterpriſe, for the Caſtle is not to be taken but by Treaſon, ſo vaniſhed: Suddenly after his departure, there aroſe a great ſmoak about the Caſtle, inſomuch that Valentine loſt the ſight of Pacolet, and was driven into an amazement. This Miſt being diſperſed, Pacolet came to Valentine, and ſaid, let us depart, for there's no way to Conquer this Caſtle, but by Treaſon; ſo they forſook the Caſtle and went towards *Angory*: being there, they demanded Tydings of King Pepin, but it was anſwered, he was gone to Ieruſalem on Pilgrimage; ſo Valentine reſolved to ſtay there till his Uncle returned, but all in vain, for by the Treaſon of Haufray, King Pepin was ſurpriſed by Brandiffer, as you ſhall hear.

King Pepin being come to Ieruſalem, by the direction of certain Guides, they were conducted to the Holy Places. During the time of their abode here in Ieruſalem, came Brandiffer the Indian King, and K Lucar, having had intelligence by Haufray, as before you've heard, accompanied with a great Hoaſt of men, and marched ſo far, that they came unto the King of Iury, being come unto him, he did very much

marvel

marvel at their coming, and after Salutations, demanded the cause. Then spake Brandiffer; Sir, know this, that by a Christian we are informed, that lately there is come into this Holy City, certain Pilgrims, the one of them is K. Pepin of France, the rest are the twelve Peers: if it be so, we crave your aid & assistance, for they are unto us mortal enemies, and have taken from me my City of Angory, making great spoils within my Territories; wherefore we desire you that they may be delivered into our hands, that we may proceed against him according to our Law. Your demand is but reasonable (quoth the King of Iury) therefore let all be done according to your wish, for I am an enemy unto all such as shall deride us and our Religion. Now hearken a little what I shall undertake, I will send unto the Patriarch about this matter, and if he have any such French Pilgrims, that he presently bring them before you. The King of Iury sent a Messenger unto the Patriarch, to bring them before him: then the Patriarch went unto the Pilgrims, and said, Friends, you must come before the King of Iury. Pepin grew exceeding sad, for he thought he should lose his life; but yet he ruled a little, and I will tell you what we will do: let us here make Henry our Lord, & I will wait upon him as a Page, bearing his Hat and Staff. Henry being too skilful in treasons, denyed it, saying, here's Orson & D. Myllon more worthier than I, let them take it upon them: qd. Myllon, so you please, I shall do any thing; then they took their way towards the Pagan that sent for them. D. Myllon took upon him the person of the King, and the King was his Page, and bare his Hat & Staff. The Patriarch after he had delivered them to the King departed, and the K. of Jury said unto them; It is told me you are all French-men come as Spies, and amongst you is the King of France. Sir, said one of the company, the K. of France is not here: How? not here (qd. the K. of Jury) if he do not shew himself openly, I will commit you all to a grievous death. Then spake Hen. the Traitor, and said, it is not I. At these words D. Myllon doubted treason, & said, Sir, I am the K. of France, but withal suffer me to tell you a thing worthy of note, we are all Christians, and it is free for us to go safely, even by your own Laws & Customs of your Country, paying a certain Tribute. Now this Tribute is by us daily paid and observed, therefore you offer us much wrong, to detain us contrary to your custom Say what you will (qd. Jury) but to Spies there is no such privileges allowed:

[illegible] Pepin, but [illegible] way with the Indian, began thus [illegible] among them [illegible] towards [illegible] ry, I [illegible] cafe of [illegible] the cafe is [illegible] againſt [illegible] deliver [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

brother Orſon, & his Father the Emperor of Greece. The lady hearing him ſay ſo, began to weep & tear her hair, & yet ſpake, ſaying: Friend, may I put truſt in you? Ay ſaid K. Pepin, even as well as if I were your natural father. Then thus know for certainty, that all that I have done, is but counterfeit, for I am a Chriſtian, & the woful love of Valentine, that was given unto him as his wife, but was betrayed & ſtolen away by that Traitor K. Trompart. Then ſhe unfolded the manner of all theſe things: when K. Pepin heard the lamentable adventures of this Lady, he began to weep, & ſaid unto himſelf thus: Ha! what truſt is in this world? alas for this poor Lady alas for Valentine: & yet to ſay it is my chance at laſt to find her out in this unlook'd for adventure. After he had ended theſe lamentations, he ſaid: Lady, now I underſtand whom you are, & ſith you truſted me with the ſecrets of your heart, give me leave alſo a little to ſhew you who I am: Here you ſee me, & in what ſhape I go clothed, yet know that I am Pepin K. of France, & by diſaſterous chance am fallen in this ſervitude. As for Valentine, know that he undertaketh dangerous adventures, & continueth ſtill without taking any reſt: Now I have knowledge of you, if between us we can make theſe things known to him, with great joy you may embrace each other. At theſe words the Lady ſwounded, but Pepin ſaving her recovered, left her, & came unto the King, being at ſupper. So here we reſt to talk any more of this matter, and return to ſay ſomewhat of Brandiffer & Lucar, who are huſied in leading the twelve Peers of France to Pyllon.

Brandiffer having the twelve Peers in pyllon, & with them Haufray & Henry, the only two heirs of the Treaſon, came unto his Caſtle, where he told all the whole enterpriſe to his daughter, how the 12 Peers fell into his hand, having ſnatched his rale, he put them into a Dungeon, whereas the Emperor, the Queen K. & Haufray lay. Henry was much troubled, that he durſt not diſcover his mind to Brandiffer for he was the firſt that was led into the Dungeon, after him Myllon Daugler, who by chance fell upon Haufray, which made him angry: Be not angry (quoth Myllon) for there are many more to come down after me, to whom you muſt give place. Haufray knew after & at it was M. Myllon, & demanded of him, by what means he came thither? May (ſay Myllon) I rather wonder how you came here, for I am ſure we left you within the City Angory. Quoth the Traitor, I was taken for a ſpy, & for that cauſe am hither brought.

Now

Now are all these Lords sorrowing in Prison but when Hautray understood that K. Pepin was not among them, he seemed outwardly exceeding glad, though in heart he could wish his death. Every one looked for nothing but death, save only Orson, & he bare it out comfortably, saying: Lords, let us yet trust to my brother Valentine & Pacolet, who by enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Castle was impregnable. Brandiffer having thus made all sure called before him his daughter Galazy, & said unto her: I must depart to satisfie mine Army; being there, I shall meet with the Indian King and Lucar, both which will aid me against the French, that holdeth the City of Angory, therefore keep well my prisoners, so he departed. And when he came unto his Army, he found Lucar ready, but as for the Indian King, he sent his Forces, and came not himself, by reason that Rozamond was lately dead.

The two Kings gathered up their Forces, & took their way towards Angory, whither being come, Valentine had knowledg thereof, who kept the City for K. Pepin. This much amazed the noble Valentine, when he saw the tents so nigh him: at last he call'd Pacolet unto him, saying: I wonder I hear not of my Uncle Pepin. Fear not (said Pacolet) for e'r long we will hear better news; & therewithal departed from Angory, & never rested till he came to the Camp of K. Lucar, who espying him, demanded of him what news, & what was became of his Master, who so long time he had served? Pacolet answered, Sir, he is long since dead, & I am come to seek a new master. (Qd. Lucar) wilt thou serve me? Yes (qd. Pacolet.) Thus was he received into his service, but he ill rewarded his new Master, for that same night by enchantment he cast Lucar into such a sleep, that he carried him into the City of Angory. Valentine was right glad of this, & Lucar being placed before a fire the enchantment ceased, & he awaked. Being awaked, he became sore astonished to see himself thus betrayed, & at last Pacolet said unto him: Master, I am at your service have you any thing to command me? At the which words Lucar grew much enraged, and taking a knife, gave Pacolet such a wound that he fell down dead. Valentine seeing this accident, was exceeding sorrowful, & said: such another friend shall I never have, false traitor (quoth he) thou hast slain him that was all my hope, if thou hast thou shalt surely pay for it; then said Lucar, I am glad that traitor is slain

Now Valentine went towards the dead corps, & took out of his bosome a pair of writing tables, in which was written the whole man-

ner of his ſon. Theſe tydings Pachelier ſent made Valentine acquainted withal, willing him that if he outlived him, he ſhould make great account of them: to Valentine put them up, & after made uſe of them: here would Valent. haue ſlain Lucar put to death, but being better adviſed, he was ſatisfied to let him remain priſoner, ſo that any two thy perſonage ſhould be taken by the Sarazens, then the body of Lucar ſhould be ſent for ranſome of the other. Thus Valentine cauſed the body of Pacolet to be honourably interred, whoſe death was he waited of all.

The next morning there aroſe an outcry throughout the army, that Lucar was gone, no man knew by what means he was: all Brandiffer made great lamentation, till one told him he was in a gory, & how he had ſlain Pacolet. Brandiffer was glad Pacolet was ſlain, but ſorry for Lucar, at laſt calling to him a Meſſenger, he inſtructed Valentine to ask him if he would deliver Lucar to K. Pepin, the Emperor, or Orſon or any other of the twelve Peers of France: the meſſenger departed on his way with theſe conditions, & coming to the City of Angory he ſpake with Valentine. After ſalutation had on both parts, he declared his meſſage from K. Brandiffer. Valentine hearing the effect of his meſſage, was much amazed, ſaluted the meſſenger, how correctly it is to paſs, that Brandiffer ſhould make choice of all theſe valiant men: how became they his priſoners? Quoth the meſſenger, I know it is not unknown, how K. Pepin accompanied with the twelve Peers of France, had laid ſiege to Jeruſalem, & during the ſiege among them one Aſtor was ſlain by the hand of Brandiffer, & by him taken in Jeruſalem, & committed to priſon, wherefore having thus related unto you the truth, ſay will you change one priſoner for another? Meſſenger, I ſhall give anſwer to the anon: returning into the hall he aſſembled the reſt of his company, & declared to them: Thus it is, that by the priſoner Lucar, we may have delivered us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle K. Pepin: now in this caſe let us conſider what is to be done. The Lords replied, you are moſt bound to your natural Father, therefore we ſuppoſe it moſt meet to releaſe him. Lucar, quoth Valentine, you all know that my mother was wrongfully baniſhed, & to my brought me to ly, my brother in the Foreſt of Orleance, where we might both have been devoured of beaſts, if my Uncle K. Pepin had not taken me up. Thus he nouriſhed & brought me up unto mans eſtate: after he made me K. & hath held me dear in daily preferments:

ments: therefore I say, these things considered, my will is, that my Uncle be set free for K. Lucar; he being thus at liberty, we will quickly work the freedom of my father and all the rest. When the Barons had heard the wisdom of Valentine, they agreed all with one voice, that he had nobly spoken. Then called they unto them the Messenger of Brandiffer, and said; Friend, return this answer to thy Master, tell him, that we shall willingly yield the body of K. Lucar, upon condition that he deliver unto us the body of K. Pepin: so after due reverance done, the Messenger departed; being returned home, he delivered his Message as Valentine had delivered it to him, whereupon Brandiffer swore by the Gods, he should have his Request.

CHAP. XLIX.

How *Myllon Daugler* (who was taken for the King of *France*) was delivered out of Prison in lieu of King *Lucar*: And how *Valentine* and the Duke of *Myllon* issued out of the City of *Angory*, and won the Battel from the *Sarazens*: and how K. *Pepin* was delivered in change for the King of *India*'s Marshal, and left *Angory*, and returned into *France*, to succour his wife.

BRandiffer understanding Valentines mind, he suddenly dispatched other messengers to his daughter Galazy, who kept the strong Castle, willing her to deliver unto these messengers the K. of France and let all the rest alone. The Maiden hearing her fathers mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Goaler of the Prison, & commanded him to call forth the K. of France, the Goaler went unto the Prison, calling for the K. of France, for I'm commanded to see him at liberty. D. Myllon hearing him say so, could not so satisfie himself but in doubting manner said, I am here, wherefore do you call me forth? if it be so, I am the first that must suffer death, I am ready to lay it down to maintain my religion, sir (qd. the Goaler) tis no such matter, for you are to be delivered body for body, to ransom another Pagan K. which resteth in captivity among the Christians: when Henry heard these words, he repented that he denied to take upon him the person of the K. Thus D. Myllon took's leave with tears, the Emp. of Greece said unto him, above all, I pray remember me to my son Valentine, & me too (qd. Orson) & tell him in what misery we be, requesting him either quickly to work our delivery, or we are not able to endure our lives, Myllon comforted them all he might, & said

said unto them, Lords, I will not return into France, till I see you at liberty, & so he took his way. Being out of Prison, he went to the Lady Galazy, & did unto her reverence, which she kindly accepted, & commended him to his Fortunes. So the Duke went along with the Messengers that were sent for the K. of France. When they were come before Brandiffer, he said unto him, King, I would have you know wherefore I sent for you, & to that end I have appointed those Messengers that brought you hither, to conduct you into the City of Angory to Valentine, and in your stead, to send me back my Son Lucar, as he hath promised. Sir (quoth the Duke) all this shall be effected to your wish; & if he will not deliver K. Lucar according to your expectation, I shall willingly come again according to your mercy. Royally spoke (qd. Brandiffer) I ask no more. So the D. took leave, and departed with the Messengers towards Angory. After few days they arived where they had free accesse to the Palace where Valentine lay, being in sight of one another, they kindly embraced. After D. Myllon took Valentine aside, & related unto him the whole course of his actions, and how K. Pepin was led away by the Indian King, who knew not who he was, & how he had taken upon him the Kings name, only to shield him from danger. When Valentine heard this, he thanked him for his deed, and began to recount what a benefit had hapned to him, that he was delivered, & the rest left in Bonds; for by your true Loyalty to your Soveraign you are escaped from danger. Valentine having ended this discourse, he caused K. Lucar to be brought before him, to whom he thus said: K. Lucar, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my hands, I shall remember you for the death of my friend Pacolet, whom you have slain. These words being ended, he delivered him unto the Messengers: Now was Lucar delivered, & the D. Myllon restored in his stead; Valentine having gathered more strength, by adding unto his powers the Dukes company, they gathered all their scattered Troops up into battell-array, & with the number of 50000 fighting men, they issued out of the City upon the enemy. Brandiffer hearing hereof, made up against him, accompanied with twenty four Kings his attendants, all holding him their chief Lord; but their number was so infinite, that the Christians could not come near to do them any harm.

Then Valentine resolved to give a new On-set upon the Pagans,

and

and courageouſly heartning his men, he ſet upon that part where was Brandiffer & K. Lucar. In the thickeſt of this Battail, an Admiral (who was Lord of Mandon) eſpying a French-man making havock with his Sword among the Pagans, he made towards him; hitting him with his Ax, he clave his head in 2 pieces: having newly done this deed, he was eſpied by another French Cavalier, who making towards this Admiral in the preſence of Myllon Daugler, he ſmote him dead: for the which act of Valour Myllon Knighted him, and ſaid among them all: That he that won Valour ſhould receive the like reward. In this manner continued the Battel all that day, even till the Sun-ſet. At laſt they drove on each part which ſhould ſound Retreat firſt, but neither the would yield, ſo that they continued all that night, till the next morning, making great Fires to give them light. At break of day the Battel began afreſh in moſt fierce manner, that blood ran down as water in Channels.

Valentine and D. Myllon behaved themſelves right valiantly, on every ſide they beat down both Horſe & Man. But Valentine was too forward for he entred ſo far into the enemies Camp, that he came very near the Standard of Brandiffer. Being there, the Indian Admiral eſpied him, who ran ſo fiercely at him, that he ſlew Valentine's horſe under him, who perceiving himſelf unhors'd, lightly got upon his feet, & with his Sword hewed out a paſſage, but he could not eſcaped, had not D. Myllon by chance relieved him with a freſh horſe. So Valentine retired himſelf out of the battel to refreſh his tired limbs. When the Indian Marſhal ſaw their ſide had the worſt, he by his policy withdrew his Forces, and in the night-time fair out of ſight, ſo that at laſt they took them to their heels and ran away.

Valentine perceiving it, ſaid D. Myllon thereof, ſo they determined that Valentine & his Troops ſhould ſet upon the Marſhal, which they did, & fell upon the Indians in ſuch furious manner, that they upon their firſt adventure, brake their Battel-aray. The Marſhal ſeing it, thought to have fled, but Valentine meeting him at this advantage, lent him ſuch a rap with his Spear, as both Horſe and Man fell to the Earth. Being on the ground, the ſouldiers would have killed him, had not Valentine charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the cuſtody of four valiant Knights.

In this bickering there was many priſoners of account ſurpriſed and taken, all which Valentine ſent into Angory, to be kept in ſafety.

By

By this time of the day Brandiffer and Lucar knew that they had the worst, but they could not make resistance, at last they resolved to return again into their own Countrys, and renew their forces a fresh. So waping up their Ensigns, they took their flight towards the Sea-coast, & the Christians followed after, killing all that withstood them: of all the Pagans multitudes that went into the field, escaped but 100 persons: they being gone, the Christians visiting their tents, found inestimable treasure, & having so done, they returned to Angory, to rest their tired limbs. After the Christians had won the battel, & given burial to the dead, Valentine commanded the prisoners to be brought before him. Among the rest was the Marshal of India, of whom he demanded if he would forsake his Mahometry: the Marshal answered, he would sooner forsake his life: then D. Myllon demanded of what country he was, he said, I am a Marshal of India, & one whom the K. loveth. Qd. D. Myllon to Valentine, we are made happy in this prisoner, for in exchange of him we shall release K. Pepin, who was led away by the Indian K. to be his dwarf, when we were taken prisoners at Jerusalem: then they demanded of him if the K. had not in his possession a Christian of low stature: yes, qd. he, there remaineth such a one in his Court, but not as his prisoner, & thither was he brought when the 12 Peers of France were taken in Jerusalem. Marshal (qd. Valentine) it [illegible] after who we inquire, wherefore let him be brought hither [illegible] delivered to us & you shall be set at liberty, for he is a Page whom I ever loved, attended on my person. At these words the Marshal rejoiced, & sent Letters to the Indian K. The messenger being dispatcht, he brought the letters to the Indian K. & when he had read them he was willing to change, for he knew not that it was K. Pepin, & calling him before him, he said, friend, we give you free liberty to depart my country, for my Marshal being taken among the Christians, shall be exchanged in your stead. K. Pepin thanked him, & taking his leave of the K. he ran unto the Lady Clerimond & said: Lady, take good heart, for I am set at liberty, & I will send Valentine unto you, who will soon work your release. The Lady hearing this, was very joyful, & Pepin departed with the Messenger towards Angory. After four few days they arrived there, where the Frenchmen spared for no cost, to shew their love to K. Pepin, at last Val. said: Uncle, we had good hap in taking the Marshal, & by that means procured your liberty. Nephew (said

King

K. Pepin) you above all men have most cause to rejoice, for I bring you the happiest news that ever you heard, & this it is: Fair Clerimond, whom you so long have lost, is now found, & by me sendeth you hearty congratulations: then he related her misfortunes, & how she had demeaned her self to shun the love of the Indian K. Valentine hearing this joyful tydings, he uttered these words: Dear lady, thou hast bought my love at too dear a rate, & cursed I, if I prove false, & for trial hereof, I will either purchase thy freedom, or lose mine own life. This speech being ended, the Marshal was delivered. Then Valentine betook him to his Chamber, to try the Tables that he took out of Pacolets bosome when he was slain, & found every thing set down, to fall out just as it was now come to pass, & taking Pen, Ink, & Paper, he wrote down what there he found, & sowing it unto his Doublet (for fear of losing) it stood him in great stead after, for the safeguard of his life, as will hereafter appear.

K. Pepin being resident in Angory, news was brought him from his wife Bertha, that all France was doubtful of his life, & of the twelve Peers of France, because they heard they were taken prisoners by the Pagans at Jerusalem. This report running for current throughout France, hath caused Arthur K. of Brittain, with a puissant host to enter the Kingdom, & to win the Crown of France by violence. Also the said Arthur hath committed to exile your young son Charles. When K. Pepin heard these tydings, he grew wonderfully desperate, & presently called together all his Barons, & sate in counsel what was requisit to be done in such a plot. At last 'twas resolved, that K. Pepin (in person) should depart into his own land, to suppress the Usurper, which he accordingly did, & coming unto Valentine, he began to speak unto the K. Fair Uncle, it were most requisite that I tarry here to gather new Forces, to rescue my father & the 12 Peers of France. Do so (qd. K. Pepin) & if it so fall out, that I overcome, I will furnish you with fresh supplies against the Pagans, that you may with more ease compass what you intend to do.

CHAP. L.

How *Valentine* under the shape of a Physician, went into *India*, to see & speak with the fair *Clerimond*. And how *Valentine* rode away with her. And how the K. of *Britain* was given to K. *Pepin* by treason. And how *Valentine* took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, and all the rest of the Prisoners:

And how the Emperor, *Orson*, and the Green Kt. kept a strong Garrison in his Castle; and how *Hanfray* and *Henry* compassed the death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orson* and the Green Kt. left the Castle, and came to the succour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the Christians issued out of the City of *Angory*, and bid Battel to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly slew his own Father; and how *Myslon Daugler* returned into *France*, and *Valentine* and *Orson* into *Greece*.

YOu have heard already that K. Pepin brought news unto Valentine of the Lady Clerimond, which having heard, it would not out of his mind; at last he resolved to pass from Angory to India, accompanied with one Esquire, & in the shape of a Physician, he went to Sea with the Indian Merchants: being arrived, he lay in the City at an Inn-holders house, till his Gown and other Habillments were in a readiness. At his first entrance in this Inn, the Host asked him what he was? he said, a Physician, and can cure any manner of disease. The Host believed him, and his Esq; served him as his Apothecary or Clerk. In this manner, lying there about 4 days, he casted his Host to him, & desired him to get a man to go about the City, to make known his Art, & see who needed help, that I may cure them, for I would fain get something to defray my charge while I lye in your house; but in the mean space, rather than you shall mistrust me, I will leave you a good pawn: Marry (qd. the Host) with all my heart, I accept of your gage; So Valentine delivered him a rich Mantle, furred quite through with costly Furrs, & bad him bring before him that party that should make known his Art. The Host went out, and brought him a ragged fellow, who had not any thing to hang upon him; Valentine yet was glad of such a fellow as this, and new clothed him from head to foot, and said unto him; My friend, go thy ways into the City, & cry about the same, that there is come a Physician, that can heal all diseases, even mad Men or Women, he will undertake to cure.

This fellow did as he was commanded, and passed from place to place, to publish this Doctors skill. At last these tydings came to the K. because he had given out, that he could recover mad folks to their former senses. So the King bearing good will to the Lady Clerimond, sent for this Physician; who altho he had before him many Cripples, blind, lame, and crooked, at his lodging, yet he left

them

them all, & came unto the King, for there lay the mark at which he aimed. Being come before the K. he did his obeysance in the name of the great God Jupiter: and the King said unto him, Sir, you be welcome to my Court, first dine, & then I shall tell you further, the cause of my sending for you. The K. being set and served, made Valentine also to be richly serued, & dinner being done, said unto him; Sir, I have a beautious Lady in this Palace, whom I would make my Queen, for I love her dearly, but the will by no means consent until the term of one year was expired: I granted her to forbear that year, as she demanded: but at the end he was possessed with a Lunacy, insomuch that none durst come within her reach; sometimes she whistles, anon she cryeth out in a pitiful manner, another while she laugheth, and then she falleth into a flood of tears, so that my heart is ouer-charged with sorrow for her. Now if your skill extend to cure her, I will give you more wealth than you can ask, for my wife Rozamond being dead, I would make her Queen of India. My Lord (quoth Valentine) fear not but she shall do well, but he is the parter to be cured, in that it hath seized her so long. Again, I must be with her all night, to mark the manner of her fits. You shall (quoth the King) have what appointed to bring you thither, but look to your self, lest she harm you.

Then one who waited on the Lady, guided Valentine to her window: now go thy way, & leave me alone, (quoth Valentine) when he beheld her in this desperate case, he said, Alas my love, you have bought me dear as I have you, but by the Gods I swear, I shall never return again to France, till I have you along with me, or here lose my life. The Lady beheld him fearfully, & whatsoever came first to hand, she threw at him, which much amazed Valentine. Then said Valentine, is this true madness, or but feigned? Dear love (quoth he) tell me true, I am Valentine your love, for whom I have suffered all this damage, think on the Brazen-head that you gave me, & of my brother Orson that had the string cut in his mouth, & how you were stolen away by the enchanter Acladain. When the Lady heard this, she fell into a swoune for joy: & being again recovered she said: Alas my Love, how many dangers have we passed through, you for me, & I for you? And now behold in what paleness I have carried my self for thee. Lady, love dearly bought is the sweetest: By this time the Trumpets sounded to bring in the King's meat for Supper, so

that he said unto the lady: My love, I will go into the Palace, but after supper I will come again for the K. knoweth not but I am a Physician, & hath sent for me to heal you: the lady bad him go. Being come into the Palace, as soon as the K. saw him he demanded of him if he could heal the lady? Yes (qd. Valentine) to morrow you shall hear her speak as discreetly as ever she did. The K. was so joyful thereat, that he gave unto him a rich Mantle, all beset with precious stones, & caused him to sit down at his own Table. After supper, Valentine said unto the King, it is necessary I have a fire all this night in the chamber where my patient is, for she will be extream sick all this night. Well, qd. the K. let all things be done, spare for no cost. Now Valentine takes his way towards the chamber of fair Clerimond, with one who carried wood to make his fire withal; which being done, he willed every one to depart, save only his Esq; then Valentine shut all the doors and windows, & said unto Clerimond: Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our pleasure, and casting his eye aside, he espyed the Horse of wood, and asked her whose it was, who answered, Pacolets: then said Valentine, let us hence immediately, whereunto she consented.

Valentine being somewhat acquainted with Pacolets horse, mounted him with Clerimond & his Esq; in a Moon-shine night, & with great expedition hasted unto the City of Angory, being come thither, Valentine caused the gates thereof to be opened, & there was great joy for the Lady Clerimond. The next morning Valentine caused her to be clad in rich habiliments, & married her: by this time the K. knew of her escape, & grew frenzy, & said: Halthou false enchanter, hast thou deceived me? If thou fall once again into my hands, I will quickly bereave thee of thy life: & so he caused pursuit to be made after Valentine, but all in vain, for they found him not. Here leave we them. Now I proceed to tell you of K. Pepin, how he hasted into France to the succour of Bertha his wife, and to chastise the Usurper. The K. of Britain not thinking what would hapen strengthened himself with all the Forces he could make, and sent out Proclaimation, that all that could bear Arms should assist him into France. Hereupon Queen Bertha, with her young son Charles, fled to Lyons to seek succour: At the same time lided a worthy & trusty Earl of Anjoy, who favouring the Queen, and pittying her distress, fortified his Castle against the Britains, to whom the Queen

sent

sent 4000 horse to keep the passage. At last the K. of Britain bid the Earl give him passage into France, but he answered, No: Hereupon there was appointed a band of Souldiers, to lay siege at Angiers, but the Earl kept close within the City, & would not issue out thereof. During the siege was K. Pepin come to Paris, & there was joyfully received: when the Queen understood he was at Paris, she hasted unto him, & when she came before him, in tears, she said: Dear Lord, revenge us on this Usurper. Lady (qd. the K.) fear it not So calling about him his Counsellors, & men of war, he made haste to furnish up his companies, & many there were that voluntarily offered themselves to do the K. any service. By this time the K. of Britain heard that K. Pepin was come against him with a great army, which feared him, & not without cause. But see what followed, for his own friends betrayed him unto K. Pepin, to save their own estates, & make their peace the better with the King. So resolving hereupon, on a night they came to him, lying on his bed, and led him perforce before K. Pepin, who presently caused his head to be smitten off, within the City of Paris. Now they thought that betraid him, all was well, but the K. afterwards seized all their lands into his hands.

Now

Now was Valentine much troubled in mind, how he should free the Emperor his Father from imprisonment, for he knew well that the Castle was not to be won by War, or Police, nor by any thing, but by Treason; At last he resolved on a subtile Plot, and thus it was: He put to Sea 12 ships, manned with 2000 men, and laden with all manner of Riches, as precious Stones, and Silks, & thus as Merchants, arrived they at this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the shape of a Merchant, setting a Rich Crown on his head, & said unto his men: Be you all privately armed within the ships, so that none of you be seen, if the Sarazens come aboard, put them to death. Then coming toward the Castle gate, with the Crown on his head, the porter said: what bring you hither friend said Valentine, I am a Merchant, going into Spain; & having many rich commodities, I here lay, that I might not pass without a tribute, on pain of death; said the Porter, I'l go to my Lady, & bring you an answer: so he went to Galazy, & told his message: the Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels aboard, she said unto her Seneschal: Go & receive the tribute due to me of the Merchant, & take along with you a sufficient company of souldiers lest they should offer you injury. He did as he was commanded, & coming to the ships they found inestimable Gems, insomuch that they were ravish'd therewith: so they taking the value of the tribute due to the lady, suddenly the Christians, that lay hid in the ship, set upon them, & slew them. Then Valentine said unto them: except we go forward in this enterprize, we shall never gain the castle: wherefore he caused 50 of his men to put on their Sarazens Gowns over their armours, & so lading themselves with silks & precious stones, took their way to the castle.

The porter tied up the Lyons, let down the draw-bridg, & thirsting after some great reward, went beyond his bounds, insomuch as Valentine led him to the ships: being come, Valentine shewed him their dead bodies, & said: I will make you like one of these, if you give me not passage into this castle: for (qd. the porter) I shall do it: why then (qd. Valentine) I will reward thee: come said the porter, & bring all those men whom you have clad in the habit of the Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the Castle, & let them enter one by one, which they did: so being entred, the Porter shewed them a secret Postern, which Valentine having gotten, caused all the gates to be set open, then winded he his Horn at which all those in the

Ship

ship hasted unto them. Then he entred the chamber of the lady Galazy, who was astonished thereat; but he said: Lady, fear not, for I have ventured the Seas, to have a sight of your Royal presence: then she had him welcome, & highly feasted him. Valentine's men having entred the Castle, with their shouts so affrighted the Lady, that in weeping manner she said unto him: Courteous Kt. save my virginity. Lady (qd. he) fear not, for there is none that dares attempt any dishonour towards your person. By this time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain, & Valentine hasting unto the Dungeon did break it open, & cryed out aloud: All you that be alive come forth. Orson knowing his voice, replied: Brother you are welcome, how came you hither? Valentine said, I am come to see you at liberty. At these words the Emperor fell into a swound; but Orson suddenly recovered him: then they came out of the Dungeon in ragged clothes & ill-coloured faces; but the Christians revelled for the space of seven days in the Castle, & Orson falling in love with Galazy, after the death of Fezon, married her, by whom he had a Son, named Orsayr, who after had the Empire of Constantinople.

These affairs being thus brought to an end, a Council was called what was best to be done: [illegible] they resolved to leave a Garrison to resist the enemy: Some said it was fitting that Haufray and Henry should undertake this task: but Haufray replied, Not we, for we are determined to go into France, to serve our father. Quoth Orson, if you be so resolved, we have small reason to weep for your departure, for there is nothing but treason in you. At these words Haufray and Henry were displeased, but they durst not shew it. At last it was resolved that the Emperor should take his rest, and his Son Orson, and the Green Knight should remain there, to defend the Castle, whilst Valentine and the rest addressed themselves for Angory. Now will we look into the treason of Haufray and Henry, who being come into France, laid a plot to take away the life of their Father, little Charles his Son, and Bertha the Queen. Being come to Paris, the King royally feasted them, and after demanded what news of the Emperor, Valentine, Orson, and the rest? (quoth the Traitors) they were all slain in a battel at Angory, at which the King waxed wonderful sad. After this, they poysoned the King and Queen. Now little Charles was still living who (as the Gods would have it) hapned under the safe keeping of Myllon Daugler.

The

The King & Quæn being both treacherously poysoned, the two traytors semed to be exceeding sorowful, but D. Myllon being a man of a valiant & courageous spirit, forthwith caused a counsel to be holden, wherein he would have crowned young Charles King of France, but Haufray & Henry by bribes so corrupted the Lords, that Charles was held too young. Hereupon D. Myllon was committed to prison for standing on the childs part, & Charles held as a kitchin-boy.

A little after it hapned, that Haufray commanded Charles to turn a spit, but the boy being full of Majesty, took up the spit, & selled him to the earth. At this, out steps Henry, thinking to smite the child, but he being ready to receive him, gave him such a box on the Ear, that the blood issued out at his mouth. Then Haufray comanded his men to lay hold upon him, but there came a Kt. which took Charles by the hand, & conveyed him to Paris. The Traytors perceiving Charles was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. Hereupon D. Myllon told his wife thereof, who was sister to Charles. the Lady could not behold the same for tears, but vowed that they should dearly pay for these treasons, & forthwith caused Letters to be written into Angory unto Valentine, & the 12 Peers of France. These Letters came first into the hands of Valentine, who could not chuse but weep at this act of villany. The Lords perceiving his tears, asked the cause: he answered K. Pepin & the Quæn are dead, & as for Charles, the two accursed brothers, Haufray & Henry, have chased him out of the Countrey, imprisoned D. Myllon, and all that held on young Charles his side: these are the contents of these Letters, & the Lady that sendeth them, requireth help to apprehend these rebels. These sad tydings put them to their wits end, & lying betwæn two extreams, knew not which way to take, for Brandiffer was daily expected with an Army of many thousands. At last Valentine said, & or to morrow night I will set free D. Myllon, or else my skill shall deceive me: at which they laughed heartily. Valentine departed, & with Pacolet as horse he suddenly arrived at Paris, where by his Art he opened the Gates, & released all the prisoners, and being shewed the chamber where D. Myllon was, he entred the same, who being fast asleep, he awaked him, & said, Arise, Jean Valentine, which am come to set you free. Then he mounted him on his Horse, & bad him not speak, for he was to pass through the Ayr. The D. prayed him to pass by the Castle of Angier, that he might but see his wife

wife, which he did, & being come to the Lady thereof, who preſently ran & killed him, demanding of him whether he went? Lady (qd. he) I go to fight againſt the Infidels, to bring home the 12 Peers of France, with an army to overthrow Haufray & Henry, & to ſuccour Charles. Having refreſhed themſelves with meat they ſet forth towards Hungary: being come, they came before all the Barrons, who were much aſtonied at Valentine's art, greatly deſiring to learn it, but he would teach it no man: Now was Brandiffer with his Hoſt, come within a mile of Angory, & there planted his ſiege. The Citizens hearing hereof, ſhut up their gates, drew up their bridges, & after got on the walls, lying a month together without making any reſiſtance. The Emperor hearing that Brandiffer had begirt Angory with ſo huge an Army, reſolved to leave the ſtrong Caſtle to the Guard of a Knight. So the Emperor, Orſon, & the Green Kt. took ſhipping, accompanied with 1000 Soudiers: being at Sea, they ſaw a great fleet of Ships coming to them, & at laſt they found it to be a Pagan with 10000 men, going to the ſurrour of Brandiffer: The Chriſtians longing to fight with the Pagans, fell upon them, ſo that there chanced a bloody battel: great valour was ſhown on both ſides, but they knew not whether the victory would incline. At laſt the Pagan Admiral encountring a Chriſtian Kt. tumbled him over Ship-board: Orſon ſtanding by him, grew angry: & taking his Ax, ſtruck him ſtark dead. This deed diſcouraged the Pagans, that they withdrew themſelves all that night, they having loſt 15 tall Ships, and 400 men. Then the Emperor ſaid: Lords, let us Arm our ſelves with ſuch Weapons as here we have ſeized from the Pagans, which they preſently did, but this enterpriſe was fatal, for the Emperor was ſlain by his own Son Valentine, who took him for an Infidel, as hereafter you ſhall hear. But here they hoiſe ſail again, and at laſt arrived in Angory.

After a months ſiege, Valentine ſent a defiance to Brandiffer, offering him battel. The Chriſtians divided their battel into ten Squadrons, whereof D. Myllon was their General. The ſecond, Sampſon of Orleance. The third, Earl of Vandſom. The fourth, Earl of Campagne. The fifth, Quintine of Norm. The ſixth, the D. of Burgoyn. The ſeventh, the Earl of Dampmartin. The eighth, the Earl of Aſſerve. The ninth, the Mathal of Conſtantinople. The tenth, was Valentine, who added courage to all the reſt. Being in order, they iſſued out of the City, to aſſail Brandiffer, who had divided his Army into 15 Squadrons, & that Squadron which had the leaſt Commander, was a K.

At the joyning of these battels, a certain Pagan (that never before had been in wars) couched his Spear in his rest, and would be the foremost man, but Valentine thinking to cool his pride, ran against him, & struck him down dead. Then they fell to it pell-mell, wherein the Christians behaved themselves valiantly, and the Indian King entring the Battel, made very much slaughter: but Valentine missing him, gave him such a counter-buff, that he set him beside his horse.

At this present the Christians got the better, & caused the Infidels to give ground, but there came in a Sarazens Captain, with 3000 men, and continued the battel more hotter then before. By this time K. Lucar lighted on the Indian K. & lent him succor: now the Christians began to retire, insomuch that they had been forced to a shameful flight, had not two valiant Kts. arrived in Angory, with 700 men at arms (the which lately had come from the holy Sepulchre, and suffered much misery) entred the field. The one of them brought into France, the daughter of a rich admiral, called Claradine, & caused her to be baptized, the name of the one, was Reynord of Province, the other, Myllon of Dyon. At their approach the Pagans were much discomfited, for Myllon of Dyon at his first encounter, smote K. Lucar stark dead, & at the next, another K. called Rabres, which accident much amazed Brandiffer. At another part of the battel rushed in Reynord, & slew many of them. Valentine wondred at these two Kts. of Chivalry, & coming towards them, said, Lords, you are welcome, I pray you what are you, or by what chance come you hither? Friend (qd. Reynord) we are Lords of France, and lately come from the holy Sepulchre, who hearing of these wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans. I am called Reynord, Lord of Province & my companion is called Myllon of Dyon. Quoth Valentine, once again heartily welcome, for Myllon Daugler is here, & all the Peers of France: so they joyntly rushed afresh into the Battel. All this while the Indian K. had a spleen at Valentine, for his last disgrace, & finding him out, accompanied only with 3 other Kings, they so encountred Valentine, that they did smite him and his horse to the ground: being down, he quickly recovered, & drawing out his sword, defended himself therewith, but with much danger. At last D. Myllon, Sampson, & Garvis, came unto his succour, getting a fresh horse for him. Valentine being mounted, made his course against the Indian K. again, & striking him down, took from him his shield, which he kept, (for he had lost his own.) This ended, tydings came, that a great fleet of Sarazens

was

was coming near unto the Haven. Hereupon Valentine ſaid, Lordo, let us preſently go ſtrengthen the paſſages. So Valentine and the D. *Myllon* of Dyon went to the Haven, but theſe were all friends and Chriſtians, amongſt whom, was his Father the Emperor of Greece, of whom you ſhall hear more at large.

The Emperor having landed his men, Valentine ſalated him with his ſpear in his reſt: the Emperor (who bare the ſhield of a Sarazen unknown) encountred with his ſon. At laſt Valentine ran his ſpear quite through his fathers body, that he fell down dead. His father being dead, he ſaid, montioy vive *Greece*. Orſon ſeeing his father dead, did weep, & ſaid unto Valentine: Brother, there is ſmall conqueſt in this, for you have ſlain your father. When he heard him ſay ſo, he fell in an extaſie from his horſe. To this lamentation of the two brothers, came Reynord of Province, & *Myllon* of Dyon to comfort them, ſaying, Knights, have patience, for tears cannot recal him; Alas, ſaid Valentine, what have I done? it were happy for me, if death would take me from this world, I have committed this fact, deteſtable both to God & men: O what will become of me? my life have I paſſed away in troubles, torments, & cares, and now to add more ſorrow to my dayr, I have ſhed the blood of my dear father. Brother Orſon, take my ſword & cut off my head, that the earth may not bear ſo bloody a butcher. Brother, ſaid Orſon, depart not thus, but repent, and no doubt but you ſhall be forgiven. So comforting him in this manner, at laſt they got him to his horſe, whereon being mounted, he ran throughout the Pagan Troops ſo furiouſly, that all they that ſtood in his way periſhed. Now began the battle to encreaſe, & K. Chriſtopher ſlew the Chriſtians on every ſide. At laſt Valentine meeting him, gave him ſuch a Canvaſada, that he pierced his body quite through. In this battel the D. *Myllon* of Dyon, & Reynord of Province, rushed ſo fierce into the battel of the enemy, that they were taken priſoners: yet notwithſtanding their adverſe fortunes, they got their liberties once again, and made Charles K. of France, with honour and joy, to the deſtruction of Haufray & Henry the 2 notable traitors: yet was not this fierce, long, & tedious battel ended, for they ſtood it out manfully on either ſide. Valentine being careleſs of life, at laſt met with Brandiffer, who encountred each other ſo fiercely that both fell to the earth: but Valentine ſudenly recovering himſelf, took the k. ſuch a blow, that he clave his head. K. Brumant ſeeing his brother ſlain, departed out of the field with the admiral of Cordes, & K. Ioſireh, who cauſed a retreat to be ſounded: the

Christians following, slew many thousands, & others leapt into the sea, & drowned themselves. So the night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City: next morning in burying the dead, there was great lamentation for the Emperor of Greece. Then his body was royally interred in the City of Angory, but Valentine could not be comforted.

The Pagans being thus twice put to the worse before Angory, D. Myllon took his leave of Valentine, to return into France, saying: Valentine, I would I could return as swiftly back, as you brought me hither. Friend (said Valentine) I would I had never known the art, for it hath brought nothing but shame & beration on me, & him an untimely death, that taught it me: so the D. Myllon departed. Valentine & Orson intended to go for Greece, but before their departure, they Crowned the Queen Kt. K. of Angory. After leave taken, Orson called the fair Galazy unto him, and said, Love, I know you are with-child by me, yet I cannot wed you, for that I have another wife; but before I go, I will make certain Lands over unto you for your maintenance, that you may hereafter live of your self, without the help of any other. All these offers she denyed, but said, she would go to Sea with him; & after confine me to some Religious House, wherein I may spend the residue of my days. Agreed (qd. Orson) & so he took her with him to Constantinople. Being come thither, they send word to the Empress of their Father's death, but concealed by whom it was done. The Lady was sorrowful for her Husband, but joyed at the sight of her Children, so did all the City likewise: making great triumphs throughout the same. The Empress being on a certain time at dinner, said unto her Sons: it must be agreed betwixt you, who shall be Emperor. Orson replyed, I appertaineth not to me to take the first place: Brother, let it be as I say, for I am beholding to you, you nothing to me: therefore take the Empire, and sway the Scepter.

At last it was agreed on, that they should joyntly govern, but Valentine continued not long in that state of dignity; for shortly after, on a morning, he called to him Clerimond, & said thus unto her: Understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, and my conscience remaineth still troubled for that fact, & I am therefore minded to go on pilgrimage. Commend me to my mother, & my brother *Orson*, both which I charge you not to see, till fifteen days be passed over, and then give them this Letter: all which the Lady must consent unto, although in tears.

CHAP.

CHAP. LI.

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how King *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his Wife, and how he betrayed *Orſon* and the Green Knight: and how *Galeran* delivered his Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made; How *Bellyſant* and *Clerimond* came to know of King *Hugon's* Treaſon, and how *Galeran* loſt his head, and how *Orſon* and the Green Knight were ſet free.

Then Valentine ſaid, Lady, ceaſe your tears, & give me your Wedding-Ring: ſhe having done ſo, he brake it in two pieces, keeping the one half & giving her the other: ſaying, My Love, keep thy half, and whatſoever you hear believe nothing, till you ſee this other half, which

I poſſeſs. At theſe words he imbraced her, & wept bitterly, & ſo departed, only one Page with him. Having long travelled, at laſt he came to Rome, there coming into the preſence of a Hermit, he confeſſed the death of his Father; the Hermit ſeeing him ſo Penitent, enjoyned him penance. Firſt change thy habit, and go barely cloathed and 7 years lye under the ſtairs of thy Palace, without ſpeaking any words, thou ſhalt neither

neither eat nor drink, but of the scraps that come from thine own Table; do this, and fear not thy sins. Sir, said Valentine, all this I will do: so after he had dined, he departed, without speaking to his servant: after this, Valentine entered into a Wood, feeding upon Roots, and he continued there so long, that he was forgotten amongst men.

Orson having now read the Letter that Clerimond delivered him, wept bitterly, insomuch as the Lady said unto him: Brother, cease your lament. Alas, said Orson, I have great cause, for this Letter sheweth, that my Brother will never return. Hereat the Lady swounded, & recovering her self, she said, why hath my love hidden his intent from me? but all her sorrow could not call him home again. Tydings was spread through the City, that Valentine would never return: Clerimond wailed Bellysant complained, & Orson sighed. Now (as the story saith) the Lady Fezon hearing that Orson had got another Lady with child, she dyed with grief. Being dead, Orson made a years solemnity of her Funeral, and after married Galazy, of whom you have heard before.

Now I shall shew you how Valentine came back to Constantinople in beggerly weeds, insomuch that he was not known, going from house to house a begging. At last he went into his Brothers Palace about supper time, & those that waited at the Table beat him away: Orson seeing them so churlish, bad them let him alone, for I am willing that all poor men should be relieved for my Brother Valentines sake, that so we may hear tydings of him. After this, they brought him meat and wine, but he espying a basket wherein the scraps were put, eat thereof, which amazed the beholders: night being come, the servitors asked Orson if he would let that counterfeit bide in his Palace. I (qd. Orson) for it may be for some vow which he hath made. Thus abode Valentine, and made his bed under the stairs of straw. On the morrow, Orson passing by, gave him mony; after came his Mother, and his wife Clerimond, and they gave him mony, saying: How can you endure thus naked, without cloaths? this night you shall have some provided for you. They being gone, he gave his mony to two poor men standing by him, who scoffed him for his labour: next day at dinner, they gave him variety of meats, which he refused, and made signs for the Alms-basket: Orson to try him yet further, caused some of the best meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it. Then said Orson, Surely this is some vow that he hath made unto the Gods. Thus did Valentine remain within the Palace without being known, that all men thought him dead.

In

In theſe dayes there was a K. of Hungaria, named *Hugon*, who heard that Valentine had given over the Empire of Greece unto his brother Orſon: this Hugon came to Conſtantinop. & was honourably received. After his arrival, he came to the Lady Clerimond, & ſaid, I am K. of Hungaria, & have no wife, & for that purpoſe I am come hither to crave your love, I know that Valentine is dead, or elſe that he will never return. Dear L. grant me thy love, & thou ſhalt be Q. of Hungaria: Sir, (qd. the Lady) I thank you for your Kingly proffer but to be your wife I cannot; for ſure my Valentine liveth, & for 7 years I will every day expect his return: beſides, when I make choice of a Husband my brother Orſon & the Green Kt. muſt know, for without their leave I will never marry. Then he went towards Orſon, & demanded of him, if he heard any tydings of his brother? Great K. (qd. Orſon) no, I heard that he left me a Letter, the which his wife delivered me, & certified me that he is gone to exile & beareth about him half the Ring that he was married withal, the other half he left with her, charging her that ſhe believe nothing of him till ſhe ſee the other half which he poſſeſſed. The Gods be his good ſpeed (qd. Hugon) for he was a worthy Kt. But one thing (qd. Hugon) have I more to acquaint you with, I am determined to take a journey to Ieruſalem, to viſit the holy Shrine, ſo you would bear me company. With all my heart (qd. Orſon) but let us go to Angory, & take with us the Green Kt. who is K. thereof. It ſhall be ſo, (qd. Hugon.) So Orſon taking leave of his Mother, & his Wife Galazy, came to Angory, & was received with great joy. Having feaſted there, they took their way to Ieruſalem. Being come into the City, (while they were beholding divers Monuments) Hugon ſtole away from them to the K. of Iury, & ſaid: I have a meſſage to deliver worth your attention. There is newly arrived here, 2 worthy Kts. that are your greateſt enemies, for they ſlew K. Brandiffer, K. Lucar, & your brother K. of India. When Rabaſtre heard all that he could ſay, he was very ſorry for the death of his brother, & ſaid unto Hugon: Can you deliver me theſe two Kts? yea (ſaid the traitor) ſo you will give me their golden ſeals; Sir, (qd. he) them and much more will I give you. Then hearken, ſend unto the Patriarks houſe, & he will tell you where they are. The K. preſently ſent out 800 armed men, & found them at dinner, then they took them and brought them unto the K. Falſe enemies (qd. the K.) to our Lives & Religion, my heart even leapeth for joy that I have gotten you, tell me what is your names? My name is Orſon, & this is the Green Kt. you

are

are the men I look for, & there is another called Valentine, had I him also, I would use you all alike, then he caused their Seals to be taken away, & given to Hugon, & they to be cast into a dungeon, & fed only with bread & water. Now all this while they knew not what was become of Hugon, for they thought verily he had been slain by the Sarazens, while he was plotting with another traitor in the City, called Galeran, & began thus to salute him; Galeran, my desire is to imploy your secresie in a matter of import, & I will reward thee sufficiently. Uncle (qd. Galeran) fear me not, I know your drift, you would obtain fair Clerimond. True (said Hugon) therefore let us write a Letter in the name of Orson, & we will Seal it with his Seal, & the Letter shall be thus framed.

Orson, by the Power of the Gods, Emperor of *Greece*, unto the thrice Renowned Soveraign Lady my Mother, unto you my Love *Galazy*, and my Sister *Clerimond*, greeting. Know this, that many things are fallen out contrary to our expectation, which are here set down, requiring nothing but patience, Ladies, know that I have found my Brother *Valentine*, on his death-bed at *Ierusalem*, & a little before his last gasp, he charged me to salute *Clerimond* in his name, and command her, that if ever she marry again, she take some Prince to her Husband: the cause why he sent not the half Ring, was, for that it was stolen from him in his sickness.

This Letter thus finished, Hugon wrote another Letter, saying.

Right well-beloved Sister, we have said enough about my Brother *Valentine*, but now we wish you, for the great beauty wherewith you are adorned, first, to accomplish the desire of the dead; secondly, to encrease your honour, we advise you to match with *Hugon*, King of *Hungary*, as you will avoid our displeasure. And for further authority, we have sealed these Letters with our own Seals. Again know, that we cannot yet return, for great Wars is fallen between the Infidels and Christians. So we leave you to the tuition of the Gods.

These Letters being sealed, Hugon gave them to Galeran, to bear to Constantinople, himself following after: by this means thinking to get the Lady. Galeran being in Constantinople, delivered his Letters to the Lady Bellysant, who commanded that he should be highly feasted. Afterward she called one to read them, & Valentine lying in the Hall, heard the Contents thereof: being read, the Ladies grew exceeding sorrowful for the death of Valentine, but especially the Lady Clerimond, pitiously lamenting his misfortunes, saying: How unhappy amongst

Women

woman am I. Alas Valentine, why went I not with thee, to ſee thy body laid up ſafe in the earth. unkind Brother, & the Queen alſo, why are you two ſuch enemies, as to wiſh me to marriage ſo ſoon after Valentines death, ſeeing I have loſt ſuch a noble magnanimous, & loving Knt. the mirror of Chivalry, the roſe of honour, the example of courteſie & the patron of truth. Death, haſt thou not one dart left to ſhoot at this poor breaſt, for ſeeing my life is nothing but ſorrow, I will never have other Husband but in ſorrow will I ſpend the reſt of my days. All this did Valentine behold, which he pitied, but fearing to be known, he buried it in ſilence. Bellyſant ſeeing Clermond thus violent, ſaid: Daughter, be patient, he was my Son, & I ſorrow for him at my heart, but when I conſider he cannot be fetched back therewith, I paſs it over, & rather think on what your Brother, and my Son Orſon doth adviſe you unto. Good Father (qd. the Lady) ſay no more, for I ſhall never marry, & therewith went weeping to her Chamber, & Valentine he lay under the ſtairs, muſing how theſe treaſons ſhould come about. Some four days after, K. Hugon came to Conſtantinople, and was received with great honour, but Clermond ſhewed him no favour. Being there he ſaid unto the Empreſs: You underſtand of the death of your Son, for whom I am ſorry: but it is agreed upon that I ſhall marry the Lady. Sir, (qd. Clermond) I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: All this treaſon Valentine heard. But in the end, the matter was ſo urged, that Hugon had the Lady, which much encreaſed his joys, but they were ſhort

Valentine having ended his Orſons to the Gods, the Oracle made anſwer to him thus: Valentine get thee out of the City, and without the gates is a Pilgrim put on his Weeds having them on, get thee to thy Palace & there before all comers reveal the treaſon practiſed againſt thy love, for in this diſguiſe thou canſt not be known. Valentine coming to the court in this diſguiſe, in the preſence of the Ladies, and amongſt them was the traitor Hugon, even he that uttered ſuch reproachful Words againſt Clermond: Now Valentine came to Bellyſant ſaying: Lady, I beſeech you ſhew me the wife of Valentine: whereat Hugon blubbing, replyed: Pilgrim, get thee gone into the Kitchin, for this is no place for thee. Sir, ſaid Valentine I would fain do a meſſage to her: would'ſt thou, ſaid the Lady, I am ſhe that thou deſireſt to ſee: then thus, I have lately ſeen your Love Valentine that by me ſendeth ſalutations, willing me to ſay, that within 3 days he will be with you. Pilgrim (qd. the Lady) adviſe well thy ſelf what thou ſpeakeſt for I heard my Love is dead. Lady (qd. the Pilgrim) believe it not, for I proteſt to deliver my body to death, if it be not true as I have ſaid: Hugon hearing theſe Words related to the Ladies ſecretly mounted his horſe, & never returned back. The Ladies on the other ſide, were much amazed at the Pilgrims tale & offered to feaſt him, but he would not, only he ſaid to them: Ladies, pardon

me, I pray, for I have certain companions in the town, which I must needs visit, therefore I request your pardon: yet Clerimond would gratifie him for his news, giving him money, which he bountifully bestow'd again upon the servants. Presently after it was demanded what was become of K. Hugon, a damsel standing by, said: I saw him now take horse, but where he is I know not.

Upon these words Galeran came in, & they asked him what was become of his Uncle Hugon? who making no reply, Bellysant grew inraged, & said: You shall not escape till you have revealed the treason Hugon hath practised against us. Then Galeran said: Lady, have mercy on me, & I shall tell you all. Say on, I pardon thée. My Uncle is guilty of treason, & has sold to the Pagans, ye Emperor Orson, & ye Green Kt. which tale fore daunted the assembly, but Galeran was presently hanged. Then Valentine leaving ye habit of a Pilgrim, return'd again to ye Pallace. Clerimond espying him, said: poor man, where have you béen? methinks you seem displeased because I said I will not marry. Valentine reply'd not at all, but left her, yet she, not so contented at his dejection, caused a costly quilt to be brought for him to lodg upon, but he refused.

K. Jury having Orson & the Green Kt. in hold, caused them to be brought before him, & said unto them: Lords, you see you are at my mercy, wherefore I vow you shall never escape with life, except you resign back unto me ye City of Angory Orson reply'd, we will never consent hereunto, except thou give K. Hugon unto us: ye K. said unto them: speak not of him, for he is ye traitor that delivered you into my hands, & he hath your seals. Orson & ye Green Kt. marvelled much thereat, & swore they would be revenged on him.

Now it fell out that these prisoners were content to yield to the Kings command, & so returned to Constantinople: being come home, Clerimond told him, that she had heard tydings of Valentine, which rejoyced Orson, who lying with his wife that night, gotasan call'd Morant, who after ruled Angory. Not long after Orson rais'd an hoast of men to go for Angory; which when Orson heard, he offered him the same City, & 4 horse-load of gold: & if any there durst call him traitor, (Orson excepted) he would fight with him; the Green Kt. accepted his challenge; so arming themselves, the Green Kt. came first into the Lists. All things set in order, they encountred each other with their spears, next with their swords at last the gréen Kt. gave Hugon such a stroak on his helm that he cut part of his head even off at his shoulders, so that he fell into a swound. Thus was the gréen Kt. conqueror. Hugon reviving again, desired a confessor, & unfolding the treason, dy'd in the place. Orson nevertheless, caused his body to be sumptuously interred. At last Hugons treason being blown abroad, they rendred the City

to

to the Emperor Orson. This being ended, they returned into Constantinople. But Clerimond marvelled he heard not of Valentine.

CHAP. LII.

How at the end of seven years, Valentine dyed in the Pallace of Constantinople: and how Orson turned hermet.

AT the end of 7 years Valentine fell into a mortal disease, whereof he dyed. Before his death an Angel appeared to him, saying: Valentine, thy glass is run, for within four hours thou shalt dye: whereat he greatly rejoyced, making signs for pen ink and paper, when he had it, he wrote that it was himself that appeared like a Pilgrim & discovered the treason. After putting to it his name, he closed up the paper, putting in the other half of the Ring that he had kept: shortly after he laid him down & dyed. When Orion saw that he was dead, he was troubled in mind. The poor man being dead, held a letter in his hand; which Orson would have taken out, but could not: then came Clerimond, & as soon as he laid hold thereon the hand opened it self. Clerimond breaking up the Letter & knowing the half Ring, said: Lords, we shall shortly hear news of Valentine: So a Secretary was called to read it: at the reading hereof, great lamentation was made, but especially by Clerimond, who falling on the dead body, said: Alas I have lost all my joy, comfort & hopes, for that my love should dye so near my person, & I know not of it. Now great preparations were made for his Funeral Rites, he was interred in great magnificence in Constantinople. Clerimond afterward betook her to a single life. Thus having shown the death of Valentine, & what became of Clerimond. Let us return to Orson who ruled the Empire of Constantinople seven years, and by his second Wife Galazy, he had a Son named Morant who after was King of Angory.

After 7 years were expired, Galazy dyed for whom Orson was exceeding sorrowful & in the end betook him to the Woods feeding on Bread & Roots. It happened one night that he saw a vision it seemed to him more glorious than his tongue could utter. After this Vision he awaked & being astonied hereat, with tears he came to the Green Kt & said Sir I see the uncertainty of the World, for which I am willing to resign my estate & children unto you: see them well educated, that they may be fit to govern such a People, for I will spend the rest of my days in solitary contemplation: When the Green Kt. had heard these words he wept bitterly. But Orion recomforted him saying: Weep not, but pray for me as I for you that you may accomplish that which I put you in trust withal. So taking his way towards a Wood, he there spent the remainer of his days: the Green Kt. after governed his children that they carefully spent their time on earth & followed their Father to his grave.

FINIS.

The

HOw King *Pepin* baniſhed Queen *Bertha*, and how he gave his Siſter *Beliſant* in marriage to *Alexander* the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. *Chap.* 1.

How the Arch-prieſt of *Conſtantinople* betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Maſter, in making love to the Empreſs, and what evil followed thereupon. *chap.* 2.

How the Arch-Prieſt having received this repulſe at the hands of *Belliſant*, to ſave his own honour, practiſed Treaſon againſt the innocent Lady. *chap.* 3.

How the Arch-Prieſt put on him the habit of a Knight at arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empreſs *Belliſant*, who was lately baniſhed. *chap.* 4.

How *Belliſant* in her baniſhment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whoſe names were *Valentine* and *Orſon*, and how ſhe loſt them. *chap.* 5.

Of the Bear that bare away one of the L. *Belliſants* children. *c.* 6.

How by the counſel of the Arch prieſt, new Cuſtoms and Taxations were raiſed through the City of *Conſtantinople*, and how the Treaſon came to light. *chap.* 7.

How the Emperor by the counſel of his Nobility, ſent for King *Pepin* to ſee the combat fought between the Arch-prieſt and the Merchant. *chap.* 8.

How the Merchant and the High-prieſt encountred at the place appointed about the clearing of *Belliſant*, and what a glorious victory did betide the Merchant. *chap.* 9.

How King *Pepin* returned from *Conſtantinople* into *France*, and after ſailed to *Rome*, to fight againſt the Sarazens that had ſurprized that City. *chap.* 10.

How King *Pepin* beſieged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* juſted with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and ſlew him, whereby the City was won again from the Sarazens. *chap.* 11.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the love the King did ſhew towards *Valentine*. *chap.* 12.

How *Valentine* conquered his Brother *Orſon* in the Forreſt of *Orleance*. *chap.* 13.

How *Valentine* having conquered *Orſon* the wild-man, went from the Forreſt of *Orleance*, whereas K. *Pepin* was reſident. *chap.* 14.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* took counſel together, to murther *Valentine* in the Chamber of *Eglantine*. *chap.* 15.

How Duke *Savary* sent unto K. *Pepin* for aid against the *Green Kt.* who would have his daughter in marriage against his will. *c.* 16.
How divers *Knights* arrived at *Aquitain*, at a solemn Just there holden, to bear away the Love of the beautious L. *Fezon*. *ch.* 17
How *Haufray* & *Henry*, accompanied with a *troop* of their confederates, lay in ambush to take away the life of *Valentine*. *ch.* 18.
How *Orson* & *Grygar* fought together, how *Orson* returned victor, and caused *Grygar* to confess the Treason, who was after hanged, and *Valentine* delivered from the Dungeon. *ch.* 19.
How *Grygar* being vanquished by *Orson*, confessed his Treason to King *Pepin*, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* had been the only plotters thereof against the worthy *Valentine*. *ch.* 20.
How *Orson* conquered the Green Knight, and what followed thereof: also, how *Valentine* attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him. *ch.* 21.
How *Valentine* took good advice, and sent *Orson* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight, and how *Orson* overcame him. *ch.* 22.
Orson having conquered the Green Kt. *Valentine* caused him to be Christened and sending him to K. *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green Knight. *ch.* 23.
How the same night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Fezon*, an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge he gave unto him. *ch.* 24.
How King *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman*; and how the Green Knight submitted himself, according to his promise made unto *Valentine*. *ch.* 25.
How K. *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to bear these tydings, and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty Souldan, who had beleagured *Constantinople*. *ch.* 26.
How the Green Knight Justed against the two Sarazons, and having slain one, the other fled: and how King *Pepin* and his Host were lodged within *Constantinople*. *ch.* 27.
How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the strong Castle, where fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen-head they had knowledge of their Parents. *ch.* 28.
How (when as *Valentine* was before the Castle, talking with the Guard),

Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*. And how he justed for the entrance, and overcame the Seneschal, *ch.* 29.
How *Valentine* shewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Brazen-head, which told him from whence he was descended. *ch.* 30
How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and *Valentine*, by the means of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter. *ch.* 31.
How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugal*, to see the Lady *Bellisant*, *Valentines* Mother, & of his returning back, and the news that he brought. *ch.* 32.
How *Valentine* and *Orson* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferragus*, and how he committed them to prison, with their woful lamentation. *ch.* 33.
How *Pacolet* the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies. *ch.* 34.
How, by Art, *Pacolet* set free *Valentine* and *Orson*, from the prison of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the fair *Clerimond*. *ch.* 35.
How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the Castle of *Ferragus*, and sailed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*. *ch.* 36.
How King *Ferragus* assembled all his Men of War to take revenge upon *Valentine* and his Sister *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitain*. *ch.* 37.
How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken prisoner in the battel by *Ferragus*, and how *Orson* set him free by the help of *Pacolet*. *ch.* 38
How *Orson* tryed the Constancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before he Married her. *ch.* 39.
How *Ferragus* the Gyant strengthned his Forces by the aid of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimain*. *ch.* 40.
Of the pittiful Tale the Empress made to *Valentine* her Son, before his farewel into *Constantinople*, and what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle. *ch.* 41.
How *Valentine* and the Green Kt. were taken Prisoners in the battel of *Constantinople*, by the Souldan *Moradin* & his men. *ch* 42.
How *Pacolet* by Enchantment, deliver'd *Val.* & the Green Kt. out of the bondage of the Soldan, & how *Pac.* cozened the Soldan when he had him upon his horse, & instead of carrying him to *Portugal* brought him into *Constant.* where he was hanged. *ch.* 43

How

How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitain*, to succour *Ferragus*, and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*, and how the King of *Inde* caused King *Trompart*'s head to be struck off: and how he would have married with *Clerimond*; and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain*, in the shape of a Woman: and how *Ferragus* was slain, and how *Orson* & the *Duke* went with their Army to *Constantinople*, to succour the Emperor: & how *Orson* led along with him his mother: & how all the *Pagans* were slain before *Constant*. and how the Emperor received his Son *Orson*, and his Wife *Bellisant* with joy. *ch* 44.

How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused *Orson* falsly of Treason, and how the Knife was found in the Kings Bed. And how *Orson* claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the *Dragon*, & how *Valentine* after the conquest of the *Dragon*, caused the K, of *Antioch* and all his Land to be Baptized, and of the lawless love of the Queen *Rosamond*, &c. *ch*. 45.

How *Clerimond* after the year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of *Inde*: And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon the King of *Inde*; and how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy* wedded *Rosamond* the fair daughter of *Brandiffer*; and how *Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breathe out Defiance; and of the answer he brought from the *Indian* King: and how *Rosamond* found a way to be taken and led unto the *Indian* King; and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, and sent *Valentine* into *Angery* against King *Pepin*, &c. *ch*. 46.

How *Valentine* returned back to *India*, after the Battel, and bare with him the dead body of King *Marzalant*, and how he heard tydings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the *Indian* King, and left *Brandiffer* in Prison. And how King *Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indian*, to be drawn to death at horses tails, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his Host, and went to *Angery*, and of the Vision of King *Pepin*, and how he went into the Holy-land with the 12 Peers of

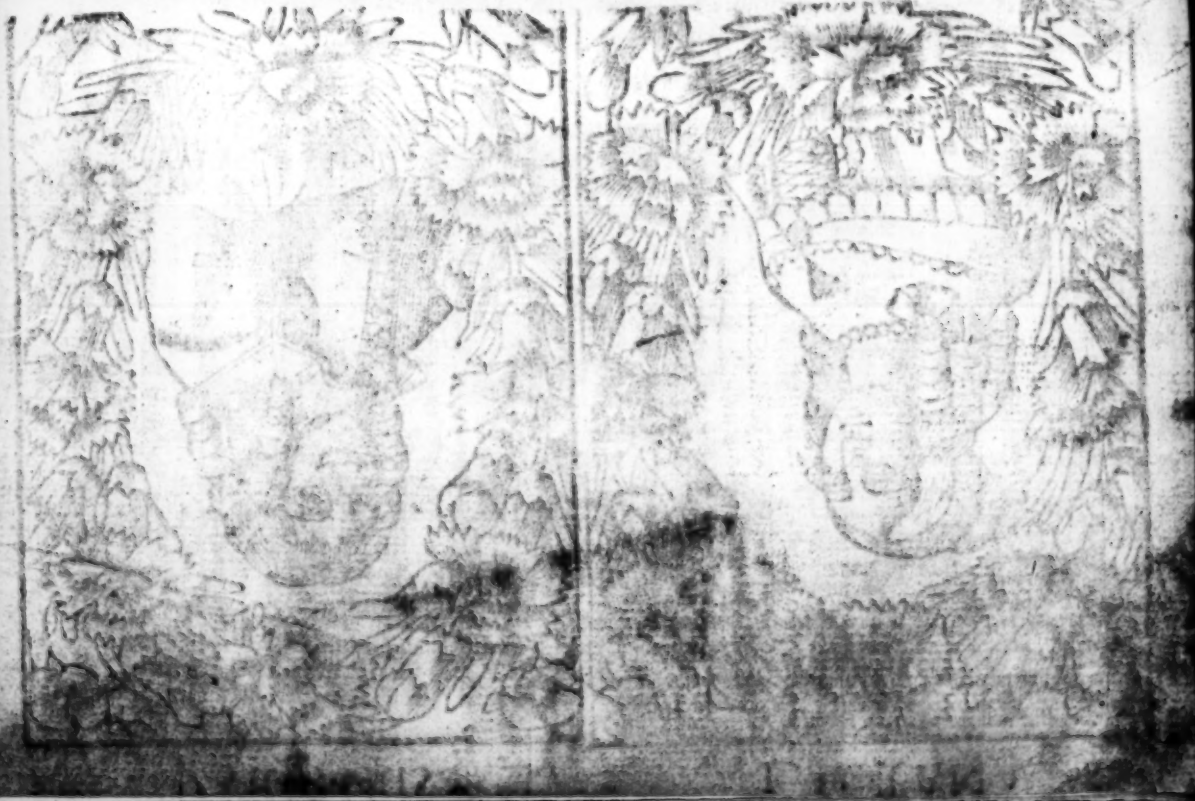
of *France*,& what hapned. And how *Haufray* & *Henry* betrayed their Father, King *Pepin*, and the 12 Peers of *France*. And how *Caliph* of *Bendas*, made truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar*, and *Brandiffer*. And *Haufray*, to further his Treason, came before *Lucar* & *Brandiffer*,& how he was *intrapped in his own net*. *ch.* 47.

How *Valentine* & *Pacolet* came *before the Caſtle*,& how *Pacolet* rais'd up the *Devil*, to ask his *counſel about* the *taking* of the *Caſtle*. And how *Brandiff*. brought the 12 Peers of *France into his ſtrong Caſtle*,& *impriſoned them*. And how he beſieged *the City of Angory*. And *how Brandiff*. *having knowledge that L*. *was captive in Angory*, *made means to Val*. *to deliver him upon ſufficient* ranſom. *ch.* 48.

How *Myllon Dangler* (who was taken for the King of *France*) was delivered out of Priſon in lieu of King *Lucar*: and how *Valentine* and the Duke of *Myllon* iſſued out of the City of *Angory*, and won the Battel from the Sarazens: and how K. *Pepin* was delivered in change for the King of *Indies* Marſhal, and left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to ſuccour his Wife. *ch.* 49

How *Valentine*, under the ſhape of a Phyſitian, went into *India* to ſee & ſpeak with the fair *Clerimond*: And how *Valentine* rode away with her. And how the K. of *Brittain* was given to K. *Pepin* by treaſon. And how *Valentine* took the ſtrong Caſtle, and delivered his Father the Emperor,& all the reſt of the *priſoners*: And how the Emperor, *Orſon* & the Green Kt. kept a ſtrong Garriſon in his *Caſtle*, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* compaſſed the death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orſon* and the Green Kt. left the Caſtle, and came to the ſuccour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the Chriſtians iſſued out of the City of *Angory*, and bid battel to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly ſlew his own Father; & how *Myllon Dangler* returned into *France*,& *Valentine* & *Orſon* into *Greece*. *c.* 50.

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how King *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his Wife, and how he betrayed *Orſon* and the Green Kt. & how *Galeran* delivered his Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made: how *Belliſant* and *Clerimond* came to know of King *Hugon*'s Treaſon: and how *Galeran* was hanged: and how *Orſon* and the Green Knight were ſet free. *ch.* 51.

How at the end of 7 years, *Valentine* dyed in the Pallace of *Conſtantinople*, and how *Orſon* turned Hermet. *ch.* 52.

FINIS.